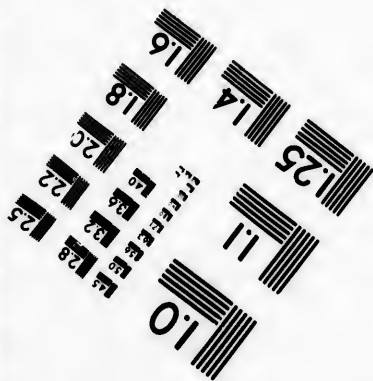
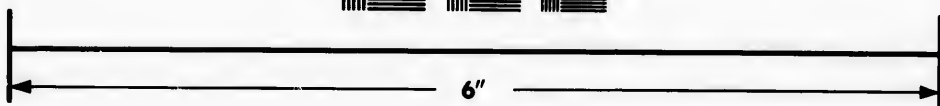
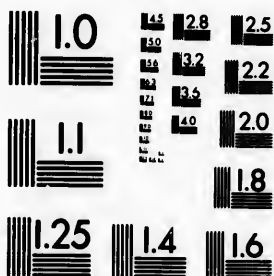


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15
16
18
19
20
22
25

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10

© 1982

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:
- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

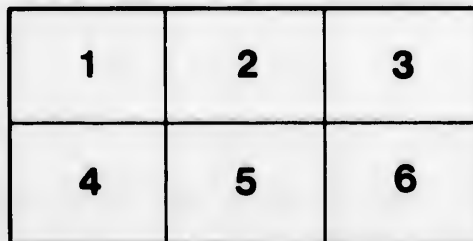
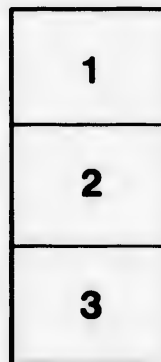
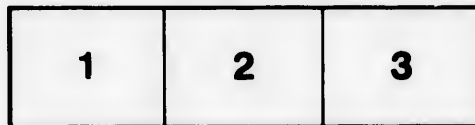
Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

is
u
ifier
ne
age

ata

elure,
à

2X

Wm. Wood 1790
COMPENDIOUS HISTORY

OF

Captain COOK'S

LAST

V O Y A G E,

PERFORMED IN THE

YEARS 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780;

IN WHICH

ALL THE INTERESTING TRANSACTIONS ARE RECORDED, PARTICULARLY THOSE RELATIVE

TO HIS

UNFORTUNATE DEATH.

WITH A

MAP of the NEW DISCOVERIES,

AND THE

TRACK OF THE SHIPS.

L O N D O N.

Printed for G. KEARSLEY, at No. 46, in Fleet Street,

M D C C L X X I V.

[Price Three Shillings, sewed.]

Published at the Act shop by G. Kearsley, Fleet Street London July 27th 1784

NW
970P
C771

3d

Abr.ed.
Lond.
1784

[Faint, mostly illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]

P R E F A C E
T O T H E
V O L U M E

PUBLISHED UNDER THE TITLE OF AN
A B R I D G E M E N T.

PERHAPS in no instance has the public curiosity been more excited, than by the work from which this little Volume has been extracted.

The price of the splendid and elegant quarto Edition lately printed by order of the Lords of the Admiralty, under the patronage of His Majesty, is unavoidably (from the numerous and expensive engravings) so very high, that the majority of the Public are excluded from the pleasure of reading it: and it is an undoubted fact, that not one person in fifty can with convenience, or propriety, make the purchase, however eager their curiosity to peruse it.

To accommodate the great number who are included in this description, has been the principal aim in printing this Epitome: I am therefore in hopes, the intention will be accepted as an apology for any defects which may be found in the execution.

His Majesty's motives in projecting these long and hazardous voyages, were truly laudable, as they had the general benefit of society without distinction,

tion, and the honour of Great Britain in particular, for their objects.

This Abridgement will considerably contribute to the accomplishment of those desirable pursuits; pursuits worthy of a great King, reigning over a great People.

Into what contempt do the trifling amusements of the principal part of our Nobility and People of Fashion fall, when compared to such undertakings!

By this method of reducing the price, and extracting the most interesting parts, the whole body of the people will have an opportunity of enjoying, what otherwise would have been confined to a very contracted circle.

Abridgements of such large works as are either useful or entertaining, have ever been encouraged, for the reasons already mentioned; and likewise, because they give the mind a bias to rational amusement, and (what is of still more importance) contribute to the extension of useful knowledge, without the inconvenience of incurring an expence amounting almost to a prohibition.

The only difficulty arising from the execution of such compressed productions, is to preserve the select passages without destroying the chain or connexion of the narrative.—How I have succeeded, must be left to the decision of the candid Reader.

The

The principal topics throughout the whole, contain descriptions of what must be not only new, but singular; the transactions at the different Islands our people visited, have not been neglected; and under this head are included those memorable ones at OWHYHEE, which record the ever-to-be-lamented death of Captain Cook.

Here it is not improper to mention, that the Inscription to his Memory is one of the most elegant compositions in the English language: to have shortened it, would have been injustice to the writer; and it was with great reluctance that some parts of Captain King's "*Sketches of the Life and Public Services of Captain Cook,*" were unavoidably omitted, from an attention to the plan, which is to give a fair abridgement, without injuring the sale of the original work.

Some years since, a concise account of Captain Cook's former Voyages, with some others, was published in four octavo Volumes, price one pound four shillings. Even this has been found too expensive for many readers; and to remove that inconvenience, they are now printing, in one pocket Volume, to correspond with this and Lord Anson's Voyage; which was also printed in the same manner, and has run through several editions.

The elegant head which is given as a Frontispiece, is engraved in Mr. TROTTER's best style, from a MEDAL, executed by Mr. PINGO, for the ROYAL SOCIETY, to perpetuate the memory of a man, whose merit is far superior to panegyric.

On one side of this medal is given a bold relief of Capt. Cook, with this inscription, JAC. COOK, OCEANI INVESTIGATOR ACERRIMUS. Immediately under the head is expressed in smaller characters, REG. SOC. LOND. SOCIO SUO. On the reverse appears an erect figure of BRITANNIA standing upon a plain: the left arm rests upon an hieroglyphic pillar; her right arm is projected over a globe, and contains a symbol, expressive of the celebrated circumnavigator's enterprising genius. The inscription round the reverse is, NIL INTENTATUM NOSTRI LIQUERE; and under the figure of *Britannia*, AUSPICIIS GEORGII III.

A few were struck off in gold, which are said to be disposed of as follows:

One to His Britannic Majesty, under whose auspices Captain Cook proceeded on his discoveries.

One to the King of France, for his great courtesy in giving a specific charge to his naval commanders to forbear an hostile conduct to either of the ships under Captain Cook's command, and to afford every assistance in their power in case they fell in with them.

One to the Empress of Russia, for her great hospitality to Captain Cook, when he touched at *Kamtschatka*.

One to Mrs. Cook, the Captain's relict.

One to be deposited in the British Museum, and one to remain in the college of the Royal Society.

There were several silver ones distributed amongst the LORDS of the ADMIRALTY, and other distinguished Personages.

The following extract from the Introduction, enumerates some of the advantages which must result from such undertakings.

“ It is not impossible but these voyages may be
“ the means of spreading, in time, the blessings
“ of civilization amongst the numerous
“ tribes of the *South Pacific Ocean*, of abolishing
“ their horrid repasts, and their equally horrid
“ rites; and of laying a foundation for future
“ and more effectual plans, to prepare them for
“ holding an honourable station amongst the
“ nations of the earth. Other discoveries of
“ new countries have, in effect, been wars, or
“ rather massacres. Nations have no sooner
“ been found out, than they have been extirpated;
“ and the horrid cruelties of the conquerors of Mexico and Peru, can never be
“ remem-

“ remembered without blushing for religion,
 “ and human nature. But when the recesses
 “ of the Globe are investigated, not to enlarge
 “ private dominion, but to promote general
 “ knowledge; when we visit new tribes of
 “ our fellow creatures as friends, and wish
 “ only to learn that they exist, in order to
 “ bring them within the pale of the offices of
 “ humanity, and to relieve the wants of their
 “ imperfect state of society, by communi-
 “ cating to them our superior attainments;
 “ voyages of such discovery, planned with
 “ such benevolent views by GEORGE THE
 “ THIRD, and executed by COOK, have not,
 “ we trust, totally failed in this respect. The
 “ natives of the South Pacific Ocean comparing
 “ themselves with their visitors, cannot but
 “ be struck with the deepest conviction of their
 “ own inferiority, and be impelled by the
 “ strongest motives, to strive to emerge from
 “ it, and rise nearer to a level with those
 “ children of the Sun, who deigned to look
 “ upon them, and left behind so many speci-
 “ mens of their generous and humane atten-
 “ tion. The very introduction of our use-
 “ ful animals and vegetables, by adding fresh
 “ means of subsistence, will have added to

“ the comforts of life, and immediate en-
“ joyments.”

All the nautical and astronomical parts are entirely omitted. The expedition with which this Volume has passed through the press, will, it is hoped, induce the reader to overlook some trifling errors.

To bring together a number of singular and interesting events, and relate them in a very small compass, has been my principal object; and in this respect I hope the public will not be disappointed.

G. Kearsley.

Fleet-Street, July 27, 1784.

THE LORDS OF THE ADMIRALTY having applied twice to the COURT OF CHANCERY to suppress the sale of this little Volume, under the idea that it would injure the circulation of their large, elegant, and expensive Edition, it has now undergone the alterations that were pointed out to the Editor as necessary to remove their Lordship's objections.

At the request of several respectable Schools, for whose use this COMPENDIOUS HISTORY is intended, as well as those described in the Preface, a CHART of the New Discoveries, and the Track of the Ships, are now given.

A SHORT

A
SHORT VIEW
OF THE
LIFE AND PUBLIC SERVICES

OF
Captain JAMES COOK,

EXTRACTED FROM CAPTAIN KING'S SKETCHES.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

AN INSCRIPTION TO HIS MEMORY.

HE was born near Whitby in Yorkshire, in 1727, and at the usual age was placed as an apprentice to a Shopkeeper; not approving of that situation, he engaged himself for nine years to the master of a vessel in the coal trade. In 1755, at the commencement of the war, he entered into the navy, on board the *Eagle*, where Sir Hugh Palliser, the commander, discovering his merit, soon placed him on the quarter deck.

He was engaged in most of the busy and active scenes in North America; yet he found time to read Euclid, and supply the deficiencies of an early education. Sir Charles Saunders, at the siege of Quebec, committed to his care services of the first importance. Lord Colville, and Sir Charles, both patronised him; and by their recommendation,

tion, he was appointed to survey the gulph of St. Lawrence and the coasts of Newfoundland. In 1767, Sir Edward Hawke fixed upon him to command an expedition of discovery to the South Seas, and for the purpose of observing the transit of Venus.

From this period, as his services are too well known to require a recital here, so his reputation has proportionably advanced to a height too great to be affected by panegyrick.

The constitution of his body was robust, inured to labour, and capable of undergoing the severest hardships. His stomach bore, without difficulty, the coarsest and most ungrateful food. Indeed, temperance in him was scarcely a virtue; so great was the indifference with which he submitted to every kind of self-denial. The qualities of his mind were of the same hardy, vigorous kind with those of his body. His courage was cool and determined, and accompanied with an admirable presence of mind in the moment of danger. His manners were plain and unaffected. His temper might, perhaps, have been justly blamed as to hastiness and passion, had not these been disarmed by a disposition the most benevolent and humane.

Such were the outlines of Captain Cook's character; but its most distinguishing feature was, that unremitting perseverance in the pursuit of his object, which was not only superior to the opposition of dangers, and the pressure of hardships, but even exempt from the want of ordinary relaxation.

Perhaps no science ever received greater additions from the labours of a single man, than geography has done from those of Captain Cook. In his first voyage to the South Seas, he discovered the Society Islands; determined

ned the insularity of New Zealand; discovered the straits which separate the two Islands, now called after his name; and made a complete survey of both. He afterwards explored the Eastern coast of New Holland, hitherto unknown; an extent of upward of two thousand miles.

In his second expedition, he resolved the great problem of a Southern Continent; having traversed that hemisphere, in such a manner, as not to leave a possibility of its existence, unless near the Pole, and out of the reach of navigation. During this voyage, he discovered New Caledonia, the largest Island in the Southern Pacific, except New Zealand; the island of Georgia; and an unknown coast, which he named Sandwich Land, the *Tibule* of the Southern hemisphere; and having twice visited the tropical seas, he settled the situations of the old, and made several new discoveries.

But the voyage we are now relating, is distinguished above all the rest, by the extent and importance of its discoveries. Besides several smaller Islands in the Southern Pacific, he discovered, to the North of the equinoctial line, the group called the Sandwich Islands; which, from their situation and productions, bid fairer for becoming an object of consequence, in the system of European Navigation, than any other discovery in the South Sea. He afterwards explored what had hitherto remained unknown of the Western coast of America, containing an extent of three thousand five hundred miles; ascertained the proximity of the two great continents of Asia and America; passed the straits between them, and surveyed the coast, on each side, to such a height of Northern latitude, as to demonstrate the impracticability of a passage, in that hemisphere, from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, either by an Eastern or a Western course. In short, if we except the sea of Amur, and the

the Japanese Archipelago, which still remain imperfectly known to Europeans, he has completed the hydrography of the habitable globe.

As a navigator, his services were not perhaps less splendid; certainly not less important and meritorious. The method which he discovered, and so successfully pursued, of preserving the health of Seamen, forms a new ærea in navigation, and will transmit his name to future ages, amongst the friends and benefactors of mankind.

That dreadful disorder the scurvy, which is peculiar to long voyages, and whose ravages have marked the tracks of discoverers with circumstances almost too shocking to relate, must, without exercising an unwarrantable tyranny over the lives of our seamen, have proved an insuperable obstacle to the prosecution of such enterprises. It was reserved for Captain Cook to shew the world, by repeated trials, that voyages might be protracted to the unusual length of three or even four years, in unknown regions, and under every change and rigour of climate, not only without affecting the health, but even without diminishing the probability of life, in the smallest degree. The method he pursued has been fully explained by himself in a paper which was read before the Royal Society, in the year 1776.*

CAPTAIN KING concludes his account of this extraordinary man, whose death cannot be sufficiently lamented, in the following words:—Having given the most faithful account I have been able to collect, both from my own observation, and the relations of others, of the death of my ever-honoured friend, and also of his character and services; I shall now leave his memory to the

A gratitude

* Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal was adjudged to him, on that occasion.

gratitude and admiration of posterity ; accepting, with a melancholy satisfaction, the honour, which the loss of him hath procured me, of seeing my name joined with his ; and of testifying that affection and respect for his memory, which, whilst he lived, it was no less my inclination, than my constant study, to shew him.

[Faint, illegible text]

[Faint, illegible text]

[Faint, illegible text]

[Faint, illegible text]

AB

H

obs

Roy

Sav

bru

dis

be

I

ati

aki

ies

C

min

on

on

To

TO THE
M E M O R Y
OF
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK,
THE

ABLEST AND MOST RENOWNED NAVIGATOR THIS
OR ANY COUNTRY HATH PRODUCED.

HE raised himself solely by his merit, from a very obscure birth, to the rank of Post Captain in the Royal Navy, and was, unfortunately, killed by the Savages of the Island Owhyhee, on the 14th of February, 1779; which island he had, not long before, discovered, when prosecuting his third voyage round the globe.

He possessed, in an eminent degree, all the qualifications requisite for his profession and great undertakings; together with the amiable and worthy qualities of the best men.

Cool and deliberate in judging: sagacious in determining: active in executing: steady and persevering in enterprising from vigilance and unremitting caution: unsubdued by labour, difficulties, and disap-

paintments : fertile in expedients : never wanting presence of mind : always possessing himself, and the full use of a sound understanding.

Mild, just, but exact in discipline : he was a father to his people, who were attached to him from affection, and obedient from confidence.

His knowledge, his experience, his sagacity, rendered him so intirely master of his subject, that the greatest obstacles were surmounted, and the most dangerous navigations became easy, and almost safe, under his direction.

He explored the Southern hemisphere to a much higher latitude than had ever been reached, and with fewer accidents than frequently befall those who navigate the-coasts of this island.

By his benevolent and unabating attention to the welfare of his ship's company, he discovered and introduced a system for the preservation of the health of seamen in long voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious : for in his second voyage round the world, which continued upwards of three years, he lost only one man by distemper, of one hundred and eighteen, of which his company consisted.

The death of this eminent and valuable man was a loss to mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored by every nation that respects useful accomplishments, that honours science, and loves the benevolent and amiable affections of the heart. It is still more to be deplored by this country, which may justly boast of having produced a man hitherto unequalled for nautical talents; and that sorrow is farther aggravated by the reflection, that his country was deprived of this ornament by the enmity of a people, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded, but from whom it was not deserved: for, actuated always by the most attentive care and tender compassion for the savages in general, this excellent man was ever assiduously endeavouring, by kind treatment, to dissipate their fears, and court their friendship; overlooking their thefts and treacheries, and frequently interposing, at the hazard of his life, to protect them from the sudden resentment of his own injured people.

The object of his last mission was to discover and ascertain the boundaries of Asia and America, and to penetrate into the Northern Ocean by the North-East Cape of Asia.

Traveller! contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate, this great master in his profession, whose skill

and labours have enlarged natural philosophy; have extended nautical science; and have disclosed the long concealed and admirable arrangements of the Almighty in the formation of this globe, and at the same time the arrogance of mortals, in presuming to account, by their speculations, for the laws by which he was pleased to create it. It is now discovered, beyond all doubt, that the same Great Being who created the universe by his fiat, by the same ordained our earth to keep a just poise, without a corresponding Southern continent — and it does so! “He stretches out the North over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing.” Job. xxvi. 7.

If the arduous, but exact researches of this extraordinary man have not discovered a new world, they have discovered seas unnavigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with islands, people, and productions, of which we had no conception: and if he has not been so fortunate as Americus to give his name to a continent, his pretensions to such a distinction remain unrivalled; and he will be revered, while there remains a page of his own modest account of his voyages, and as long as mariners and geographers shall be instructed by his new map of the Southern hemisphere, to trace the various courses and discoveries he has made.

If public services merit public acknowledgments; if the man who adorned and raised the fame of his country is deserving of honours; then Capt. COOK deserves to have a monument raised to his memory, by a generous and grateful nation.

Virtutis uberrimum alimentum est honos.

VAL. MAXIMUS, Lib. 2, Cap. 6.

THE Objects of this Voyage will be best explained by inserting the following Extracts from Captain Cook's Instructions.

YOU are hereby required and directed, his Majesty having a good opinion of your abilities, to take the command of the Resolution and Discovery, and proceed upon a voyage of finding out a Northern passage by sea, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean.

On your arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, you are to refresh the sloop's companies.

You are, if possible, to leave the Cape of Good Hope by the end of October, or the beginning of November next, and proceed to the Southward in search of some islands said to have been lately seen by the French, in the latitude of 48 deg. South, and about the meridian of Mauritius. In case you find those islands, you are to examine them thoroughly for a good harbour; and upon discovering one, make the necessary observations to facilitate the finding it again; as a good port, in that situation, may hereafter prove very useful. You are then to proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Isles (touching at New Zealand in your way thither, if you should judge it necessary and convenient) and taking care to arrive there time enough to admit of your giving the sloop's companies the refreshment they may stand in need of.

Upon your arrival at Otaheite, or the Society Isles, you are to land Omiah at such of them as he may choose, and to leave him there.

You are to distribute among the Chiefs of those islands such part of the presents with which you have been supplied, as you shall judge proper, reserving the remainder to distribute among the natives of the countries you may discover in the Northern Hemisphere. You are to leave those islands in the beginning of February, or sooner if you shall judge it necessary, and then proceed in as direct a course as you can to the coast of New Albion, endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. North.

Upon your arrival on the coast of New Albion, you are to put into the first convenient port to recruit your wood and water, and procure refreshments,

refreshments, and then to proceed Northward along the coast, as far as the latitude of 65 deg. or farther, where we could wish you to arrive in the month of June next. When you get that length, you are very carefully to search for, and to explore, such rivers or inlets as may appear to be of a considerable extent, and pointing towards Hudson's or Baffin's Bays; and if, from your own observations, or from any information you may receive from the natives (who, there is reason to believe, are the same race of people, and speak the same language, of which you are furnished with a Vocabulary, as the Esquimaux) there shall appear to be a certainty, or even a probability, of a water passage into the afore-mentioned bays, or either of them, you are, in such case, to use your utmost endeavours to pass through with one or both of the sloops, unless you shall be of opinion that the passage may be effected with more certainty, or with greater probability, by smaller vessels; in which case you are to set up the frames of one or both the small vessels with which you are provided, and, when they are put together, and are properly fitted, stored, and victualled, you are to dispatch one or both of them, under the care of proper officers, men, and boats, in order to attempt the said passage. But, nevertheless, if you shall find it more eligible to pursue other measures than those above pointed out, in order to make a discovery of the before-mentioned passage, (if any such there be) you are at liberty, and we leave it to your discretion, to pursue such measures accordingly.

In case you shall be satisfied that there is no passage through to the above-mentioned bays, sufficient for the purposes of navigation, you are, at the proper season of the year, to repair to the port of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, or wherever else you shall judge more proper, in order to refresh your people and pass the Winter; and, in the Spring of the ensuing year 1778, to proceed from thence to the Northward, as far as, in your prudence, you may think proper, in further search of a North East, or North West passage, from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic Ocean, or the North Sea: and if, from your own observation, or information, there shall appear to be a probability of such passage, you are to proceed as above directed: and, having discovered such passage, or failed in the attempt, make the best of your way back to England, by such route as you may think best for the improvement of geography and navigation.

At whatever places you may touch in the course of your voyage, where accurate observations have not already been made, you are, as far as your time will allow, very carefully to observe the true situation of such places, both in latitude and longitude; the variation of the needle;

ble; bearings of head-lands; height, direction, and course of the tides and currents; depths and soundings of the sea; shoals, rocks, &c. and also to survey, make charts, and take views of such bays, harbours, and different parts of the coast, and to make such notations thereon, as may be useful either to navigation or commerce. You are also carefully to observe the nature of the soil, and the produce thereof. You are likewise to observe the genius, temper, disposition, and number of the inhabitants, where you find any; and to endeavour to cultivate a friendship with them.

You are also, with the consent of the natives, to take possession, in the name of the King of Great Britain, of convenient situations in such countries as you may discover, that have not already been discovered or visited by any other European power; and to distribute among the inhabitants such things as will remain as traces and testimonies of your having been there; but if you find the countries so discovered are uninhabited, you are to take possession of them for his Majesty, by setting up proper marks and inscriptions.

You are, by all opportunities, to send to our Secretary accounts of your proceedings; and upon your arrival in England, you are immediately to repair to this office, in order to lay before us a full account of the whole course of your voyage; taking care, before you leave the sloop, to demand from the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they may have kept, and to seal them up for our inspection; and enjoining them, and the whole crew, not to divulge where they have been, until they shall have permission so to do: and you are to direct Captain Clerk to do the same, with respect to the officers, petty officers, and crew of the Discovery.

These instructions are dated July 6, 1776, and signed by Lord Sandwich and two other Commissioners.

C O N T E N T S.

	<i>Page</i>
PREFACE containing a Description of the	
FRONTISPIECE	iii to ix
Extracts from the Life of CAPTAIN COOK,	
by <i>Captain King</i>	x to xiv
Description to the Memory of CAPTAIN	
COOK	xv to xix
Instructions for the Voyage	xx to xxiii
P A R T I.	
Transactions from the commencement of the	
Voyage, in February 1776, to quitting	
New Zealand, in February 1777	1 to 18
P A R T II.	
From leaving New Zealand, in February	
1777, to their arrival at Otaheite, in July	
following	19 to 84
P A R T III.	
Transactions at Otaheite and the Society	
Islands, and prosecution of the Voyage to	
New Albion, or the West side of North	
America, from July 1777, to March 1778	85 to 139
P A R T IV.	
Transactions amongst the natives of North	
America; Discoveries along that coast, and	
the Eastern extremity of Asia, Northward,	
to Icy Cape, and return, Southward, to	
the Sandwich Islands, from March 1778,	
to January 1779; which ends Captain	
Cook's narrative	140 to 204

P A R T

of the tides
s, &c. and
s, harbours,
ns thereon,
re also care-
cof. You
number of
cultivate a

ession, in
uations in
been disco-
ute among
imonies of
covered are
Majesty, by

accounts of
are imme-
ill account
u leave the
log-books
ur inspec-
lge where
nd you are
e officers,

signed

TS

PART V.

Captain King's Journal of the transactions
on returning to the Sandwich Islands, from
January 1779, to March following - - 205 to 267

PART VI and LAST.

Transactions during the second expedition to
the North, by the way of Kamtschatka,
and on the return home, by the way of
Canton and the Cape of Good Hope, from
March 1779, to August 1780 - - - 268 to the
end

A

COMPENDIOUS HISTORY, &c.

PART I.

Containing a summary view of the principal circumstances that happened from leaving England in February 1776, to their departure from New Zealand in February 1777.

NOTWITHSTANDING our great Circumnavigator, CAPTAIN COOK, had already made two very interesting voyages of discovery, (*a Compendium of which is now printing in one volume, to correspond with this, and will be published in a few days*) his ardour to continue these pursuits, which are always attended with difficulties of the first magnitude, seems rather increased than abated. The objects of this, his third and last voyage, were, for making Discoveries in the **NORTH-ERN HEMISPHERE**, and to determine the position and extent of the West side of **NORTH AMERICA**; also its distance from **ASIA**; and the practicability of a Northern passage to **EUROPE**.

The commissions for the prosecution of this important undertaking, were received on the 10th of Feb. 1776.

Captain Cook was appointed to the command of his Majesty's sloop the Resolution, and Captain Clerke to that of the Discovery, a ship of three hundred tons burthen.

They immediately took on board all the necessary stores, and a considerable quantity of iron tools and trinkets, which might enable them to cultivate a friendly intercourse with the inhabitants of such countries as they might be fortunate enough to meet with; they also took some live stock, consisting of sheep, two cows with their

B.

calves,

205 to 267

268 to the end

A COM

calves, and a bull; they were likewise furnished with a quantity of European garden seeds, which could not fail of being valuable presents to the new discovered islands.

As they were to touch at OTAHEITE in their way, they were ordered to carry OMAI back to his native country. He left London with a mixture of regret and satisfaction; when he talked of his friends in England, it was with difficulty he refrained from tears; but the instant the conversation turned to his own country, his eyes sparkled with joy. He was loaded with presents of considerable value by his MAJESTY, LORD SANDWICH, Mr. BANKS (now Sir JOSEPH) and other persons of distinction.

Several months were spent in preparation for this long and important voyage. Both the ships arrived in Plymouth Sound on the 30th of June; here they made a short stay to take in some additional provisions, to replace what had been expended, also a quantity of Port wine; and the petty officers and seamen received two months wages in advance. Contrary winds, and other circumstances of little consequence, prevented their clearing the channel till the 14th of July in the evening. There were on board the two ships 192 persons, officers included. Nothing material happened till the 1st of August, when they arrived off Teneriffe; where, by permission of the Governor, who behaved with the greatest politeness, they took in provision for the sheep, cows, &c. also wood, water, and other necessaries.

To the eastward of Santa Cruz, which is the principal city, the island appears perfectly barren. Ridges of hills run toward the sea; between which ridges are deep valleys, terminating at mountains or hills that run across, and are higher than the former.

Mr. Anderson, the surgeon of the Resolution, a gentleman of distinguished abilities, but who unfortunately died upon the voyage, says, the basis of the hills is a heavy, compact, bluish stone, mixed with some shining particles; and, on the surface, large masses of red friable earth, or stone, are scattered about.

The city of Santa Cruz, he observes, though not large, is tolerably well built. The churches are not magnificent without; but within are decent, and indifferently

ished with a
ould not fail
ered islands.
n their way,
o his native
f regret and
in England,
rs; but the
country, his
with presents
ORD SAND-
other per-

for this long
ved in Ply-
they made a
ions, to re-
tivity of Port
received two
, and other
their clear-
the evening.
ons, officers
the 1st of
ere, by per-
the greatest
eep, cows,

the princi-
n. Ridges
ridges are
lls that run

, a gentle-
nately died
is a heavy,
g particles;
able earth,

though not
es are not
nd indiffer-
ently.

ently ornamented. They are inferior to some of the churches at Madeira; but, he imagines, this rather arises from the different disposition of the people, than from their inability to support them better. For the private houses, and dress of the Spanish inhabitants of Santa Cruz, are far preferable to those of the Portuguese at Madeira; who, perhaps, are willing to strip themselves, that they may adorn their churches.

In the afternoon of the 2d, four of the officers hired mules to ride to the city of Languna, so called from an adjoining lake, about four miles from Santa Cruz. They arrived there between five and six in the evening; but found a sight of it very unable to compensate for their trouble, as the road was very bad, and the mules but indifferent. The place is, indeed, pretty extensive, but scarcely deserves to be dignified with the name of City. The disposition of its streets is very irregular; yet some of them are of a tolerable breadth, and have some good houses. In general, however, Languna is inferior in appearance to Santa Cruz, though the latter is but small, if compared with the former.

Mules are here much used instead of horses, which are rather scarce and small, but well shaped; they are principally reserved for the officers. Oxen are also employed to drag their carts along upon a large clumsy piece of wood, and they are yoked by the head; though it doth not seem that this has any peculiar advantage over our method of fixing the harness on the shoulders.

The air varies here in its temperature exceedingly. Mr. Anderson says, he could sensibly perceive it only in riding from Santa Cruz up to Languna; and you may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. He was assured that no person could live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the Pic, after the month of August.

They make 40,000 pipes of wine annually, the greatest part of which is either consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West Indies. North America generally took before the late war 6,000 pipes of their wine; at the time this account was written, their trade with that part of the world was much interrupted; but in all probability has returned since. The corn they raise

raise is; in general, insufficient to maintain the inhabitants; but the deficiency used to be supplied by importation from the North Americans, who took their wines in return.

None of the race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries now remain a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; but their descendants are known, from their being remarkably tall, large-boned, and strong. The men are, in general, of a tawny colour, and the women have a pale complexion, entirely destitute of that bloom, which distinguishes our Northern beauties. Omai did not, he said, perceive much difference between the English and these people, only that they were not so friendly; to us, there seems to be very little similarity, either in persons or manners. This serves to prove how very differently the same object strikes the eye.

Mr. Anderson intended to visit the top of the famous mountain called the Pic, but declined it from an apprehension that it would require more time than he could conveniently spare. He says, its appearance did not correspond with his ideas; it is, says he, far from equalling the noble figure of Pico, one of the Western isles which I have seen; though its perpendicular height may be greater. This circumstance, perhaps, arises from its being surrounded by other very high hills; whereas Pico stands without a rival.

They weighed anchor on the 14th of August, and, at nine o'clock in the evening of the 10th, they saw the island of Bonavista bearing South, distant little more than a league. After hauling to the Eastward till twelve o'clock, to clear the sunken rocks that lie about a league from the South East point of the island, they found themselves close upon them, and did but just weather the breakers. Their situation, for a few minutes, was very alarming.

They proceeded on their voyage, without meeting with any thing of note, till the 6th of October. They had, for some days before, seen albatrosses, pintadocs, and other petrels, which occasioned them to sound; but there was no ground with a line of one hundred and fifty fathoms.

On the 8th they saw some birds called noddies, one of which was caught in the rigging. It is said they never fly
far

the inhabi-
by impor-
their wines

re when the
in a distinct
the settlers ;
being re-
the men are,
have a pale
which dis-
id not, he
English and
lly ; to us,
in persons
differently

the famous
an appre-
n he could
not corres-
ualling the
es which I
t may be
om its be-
ereas Pico

t, and, at
y saw the
more than
e o'clock,
e from the
hemselves
breakers.
alarming.
ting with
hey had,
and other
there was
fathoms.
s, one of
never fly
far

far from land, yet they then conceived themselves at least one hundred leagues from the nearest, which was either Gough's or Richmond Island. They are web footed, and something larger than an English blackbird, and nearly as black, except the upper part of the head, which is white.

On the 18th of October, they arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, and found in the bay two French East India ships; the one outward, and the other homeward bound. And two or three days before, another homeward bound ship of the same nation had parted from her cable, and been driven on shore at the head of the bay, where she was lost. The crew were saved; but the greatest part of the cargo shared the same fate with the ship, or was plundered and stolen by the inhabitants.

After the usual salutation, Captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by some officers, and waited on the Governor, the Lieutenant Governor, the Fiscal, and the Commander of the troops. These gentlemen received them with the greatest civility; and the Governor, in particular, promised them every assistance that the place afforded. Before the Captain returned on board he ordered soft bread, fresh meat, and greens, to be provided every day for the ship's company.

Nothing remarkable happened till the evening of the 31st, when it began to blow excessively hard at South East, and continued for three days; during which time there was no communication between the ship and the shore. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors. Its violence was much felt on shore, the tents and observatories which they had erected by permission of the Governor, were destroyed, and their astronomical quadrant had like to have been irreparably injured.

In the morning of the 10th, the Discovery arrived in the bay.* Captain Clerke informed them that he had sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and should have been with them a week sooner, if the late gale of wind had not blown him off the coast. Upon the whole, he was seven days longer in his passage from England than the Resolution. He had the misfortune to lose one of his

B 3

marines,

* The Discovery was detained at Plymouth some days after the Resolution had sailed from thence.

marines, by falling over-board; but there had been no other mortality amongst his people, and they now arrived well and healthy.

They sent the cattle already mentioned on shore to graze; one night some dogs forced the sheep out of their pens, and killed four, the rest were dispersed; however, they were all recovered but two ewes, but not without much trouble and expence.

Mr. Hemmy, the Lieutenant Governor, has taken some pains to introduce European sheep at the Cape; but his endeavours have been frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who hold their own breed in greater estimation, on account of their large tails, of the fat of which they sometimes make more money than of the whole carcase besides.*

Mr. Anderson and some of the officers made an excursion into the country in one of their waggons; they crossed the large plain that lies to the Eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand, like that commonly found on beaches, and produces only heath, and other small plants of various sorts. They passed a large farm-house in the afternoon, with some corn-fields, and pretty considerable vineyards, situated beyond the plain, near the foot of some low hills, where the soil becomes worth cultivating. About seven o'clock they arrived at Stellenbosh, the colony next to that of the Cape for its importance.

The village does not consist of more than thirty houses, and stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, above twenty miles to the Eastward of the Cape Town. The houses are neat; and, with the advantage of a rivulet which runs near, and the shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, forms a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some vineyards and orchards, which, from their thriving appearance, indicate an excellent soil; though, perhaps, they owe much to climate, as the air has an uncommon serenity. They had little success in their botanical searches, nor did they find many insects; the soil in general consisted of yellowish clay intermixed with sand.

They

* The most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep, is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from fifteen to twenty pounds; the poorest inhabitants use it for butter.

They left Stellenbosh, and paid a visit to a Mr. Cloeder, who entertained them with great hospitality. Here they saw a very remarkable stone, which, on account of its size, is called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills; and though the road to it is neither very steep nor rugged, they were above an hour and a half in walking to it. It is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lies nearly South and North. The East and West sides are steep, and almost perpendicular. The South end is likewise steep, and its greatest height is there; from whence it declines gently to the North part, by which they ascended to its top, and had an extensive view of the country.

Its circumference must be at least half a mile, as it took above half an hour to walk round it, including every allowance for the bad road, and stopping a little. At its highest part, which is the South end, it seems to equal the dome of St. Paul's church. They were much incommoded in this little excursion by musquitoes or sand flies.

Captain Cook, immediately after the loss of the two ewes, sent all the sheep and other animals on board. And he also here increased his stock considerably, by the addition of two young bulls, two heifers, two young stone-horses, two mares, two rams, several goats, rabbits, and poultry.

On the 30th of November, the ships left the Cape, and proceeded on their voyage.

On the 5th of December, a sudden squall of wind carried away the Resolution's mizen top-mast. Having another to replace it, the loss was not felt. On the 6th, in the evening, they passed through several small spots of water of a reddish colour. Some of this was taken up; and it was found to abound with a small animal, which the microscope discovered to be like a cray-fish, of a reddish hue.

They met with rough weather in their course to the South East, which occasioned the ships to roll and tumble very much, and made the preservation of the cattle difficult; and, notwithstanding all their care, they lost several goats

goats and a few of the sheep; the cold also, for they now felt it very sensibly, contributed to this loss.

Nothing very interesting happened from the 5th of December till the 26th of January, when they arrived at Van Diemen's Land; where, as soon as they had anchored in Adventure Bay, Captain Cook ordered the boats to be hoisted out. In one of them he went himself, to look for the most commodious place for furnishing supplies; and Captain Clerke went in his boat upon the same service.

Next morning early, Lieutenant King went to the East side of the bay with two parties; one to cut wood, and the other grass, under the protection of the marines. For though none of the natives had appeared, there could be no doubt that some were in the neighbourhood; they also sent the launch for water. In the evening they drew the seine at the head of the bay, and, at one haul, caught a great quantity of fish. Most of them were of that sort known to seamen by the name of elephant fish.

In the afternoon next day, they were agreeably surprised with a visit from the natives; eight men and a boy. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments unless we consider as such, and as a proof of their love of finery, some large punctures or ridges raised on different parts of their bodies, some in straight, and others in curved lines.

They were of common stature, but rather slender. Their skin was black, and also their hair, which was as woolly as that of any native of Guinea; but they were not distinguished by remarkably thick lips, nor flat noses. On the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. They had pretty good eyes; and their teeth were tolerably even, but very dirty. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with a red ointment; and some had their faces also painted with the same composition.

They received every present without the least appearance of satisfaction. When some bread was given, as soon as they understood that it was to be eaten, they either returned it or threw it away, without even tasting it. They also refused some elephant fish, both raw and dressed. But upon giving some birds to them, they did not
return

return these, and easily made Captain Cook understand they were fond of such food. Two pigs were brought on shore with an intention to leave them, but the inhabitants seized them, and were for carrying them away immediately, to kill them as it was supposed.

Omai discharged a musquet to shew them the superiority of European weapons, which alarmed them so much, that they ran instantly into the woods. One of them was so frightened, that he let drop an axe and two knives that had been given him. Afterwards they went to the place where some of the Discovery's people were employed in taking water into their boat. The officer of that party, not knowing that they had paid them so friendly a visit, nor what their intent might be, fired a musquet in the air, which sent them off with the greatest precipitation.

Thus ended the first interview with the natives. Immediately after their final retreat, judging that their fears would prevent their remaining near enough to observe what was passing, Captain Cook ordered the two pigs, being a boar and sow, to be carried about a mile within the woods, at the head of the bay. A young bull and a cow, and some sheep and goats, were also, at first, intended to have been left, as an additional present to Van Diemen's Land. But all thought of this was laid aside, from a persuasion that the natives, incapable of entering into the views of improving their country, would destroy them.

Several of the natives were seen next morning sauntering about the shore; they now seemed satisfied we did not intend to injure them, and were evidently willing to renew the intercourse. With this view the Captain and several of his officers went on shore; upwards of twenty of the inhabitants presently joined them. There was one of this company conspicuously deformed; and who was not more distinguishable by the hump upon his back, than by the drollery of his gestures, and the seeming humour of his speeches; which he was very fond of exhibiting. Unfortunately he could not be understood, the language spoken here being wholly unintelligible. It appeared to be different from that spoken by the inhabitants of the more northern parts of this country; which is not extraordinary,

extraordinary, since those now seen, and those they visited upon their former voyage, differ in many respects. Nor did they seem to be such miserable wretches as the natives whom Dampier mentions to have seen on its Western coast.

Some of the present group wore, loose, round their necks, three or four folds of small cord, made of the fur of some animal; and others of them had a narrow slip of the *kangaroo* skin tied round their ancles. They received some beads and medals with much pleasure. But seemed to set no value on iron, or on iron tools, and were even ignorant of the use of fish-hooks; yet it is not to be supposed that a people, situated as they are upon a sea-coast, who seem to derive no part of their sustenance from the productions of the ground, should not be acquainted with some mode of catching fish. Their habitations were little sheds or hovels built of sticks, and covered with bark. There were evident signs of their sometimes taking up their abode in the trunks of large trees, which had been hollowed out by fire, most probably for this very purpose.

After Captain Cook had staid some time with the natives, being well convinced they would give his people no disturbance, he returned on board to dinner; where Lieutenant King arrived soon after, and informed him, that just as he left the shore, several women and children made their appearance. These females wore a *kangaroo* skin tied over the shoulders, and round the waist. But its only use seemed to be, to support their children when carried on their back; for it did not cover those parts which most nations conceal; being, in all other respects, as naked as the men, and as black; and their bodies marked with scars in the same manner. But in this they differed from the men, that though their hair was of the same colour, some of them had their heads compleatly shorn; in others this operation had been performed only on one side, while the rest of them had all the upper part of the head shorn close, leaving a circle of hair all round, somewhat like the tonsure of the Romish Ecclesiastics. Many of the children had fine features, and were thought pretty; but of the persons of the women, especially those advanced in years, a less favourable report

ose they visi-
any respects.
retches as the
seen on its

round their
made of the
had a narrow
ncles. They
uch pleasure.
on iron tools,
h-hooks; yet
uated as they
part of their
ound, should
ng fish. Their
of sticks, and
signs of their
unks of large
re, most pro-

e with the na-
ve his people
inner; where
nformed him,
a and children
re a kangaroo
e waist. But
children when
er those parts
ther respects,
their bodies
t in this they
ir was of the
ts compleatly
rformed only
all the upper
le of hair all
omish Eccle-
atures, and
the women;
vourable re-
port

rt was made. However, some of the gentlemen be-
nging to the Discovery, were said to have paid their
dresses, and made liberal offers of presents, which were
ected with great disdain; whether from a sense of
rtue, or the fear of displeasing their men, is uncertain.
hat this gallantry was not very agreeable to the latter,
ciar; for an elderly man, as soon as he observed it,
dered all the women and children to retire, which
ey obeyed, though some of them shewed a little reluc-
ace.

Mr. Anderson, as far as he had an opportunity of ex-
aining this country, while the ships lay in Adventure
y, says, there are several tall forest trees in this coun-
y, which are very close grained and extremely tough;
for spars, oars, and many other uses; and would, on
casion, make good masts (perhaps none better) if a
ethod could be found to lighten it. It was remarked,
at birds were seldom killed an hour or two, before
ey were almost covered with maggots; this was attri-
uted to the heat, as they had no reason to suppose there
a peculiar disposition in the climate to render sub-
stances soon putrid.

The only animal of the quadruped kind they got, was
sort of *opossum*, about twice the size of a large rat;
d is most probably, the male of that *species* found at
ndeavour River. It is of a dusky colour above, tinged
th a brown or rusty cast, and whitish below. About
third of the tail towards its tip, is white, and bare un-
erneath; by which it probably hangs on the branches
f trees, as it climbs these, and lives on berries.

There are several sorts of birds, but all so scarce and
y, that they are evidently harrassed by the natives, who
erhaps draw much of their substance from them. In
e woods, the principal sorts are large brown hawks or
gles; crows, nearly the same as ours in England; yel-
owish paroquets; and large pigeons. On the shore
ere several common and sea gulls; a few black oyster
atchers, or sea-pies; and a pretty plover of a stone co-
ur, with a black hood. About the pond or lake be-
nd the beach, a few wild ducks were seen; and some
ags used to perch upon the high leafless trees near the
ore.

Some

Some pretty large blackish snakes were seen in the woods; and they killed a large, hitherto unknown, lizard, fifteen inches long and six round, elegantly clouded with black and yellow; besides a small sort, of a brown gilded colour above, and rusty below.

The sea affords a much greater plenty, and at least as great a variety as the land. Several large rays, nurses, and small leather jackets were caught; with some small white bream, which were firmer and better than those caught in the lake. They likewise got a few soles and flounders; two sorts of gurnards, one of them a new species; some small spotted mullet; and very unexpectedly, the small fish with a silver band on its side called *atherina hepsetus* by Hasselquist.

Upon the rocks are plenty of muscles, and some other small shell-fish. There are also great numbers of sea-stars; some small limpets; and large quantities of sponge; one sort of which, that is thrown on shore by the sea, but not very common, has a most delicate texture.

Many pretty *Medusa's heads* were found upon the beach; and the stinking *laplysa* or sea-hare, which, as mentioned by some authors, has the property of taking off the hair by the acrimony of its juice; but this sort was deficient in this respect.

Insects, though not numerous, are here in considerable variety. Amongst them are grasshoppers, butterflies, and several sorts of small moths, finely variegated. There are two sorts of dragon-flies, gad-flies, camel flies; several sorts of spiders; and some scorpions; but the last are rather rare.

The people of this place seem mild and chearful, and without reserve or jealousy of strangers. Their colour is a dull black, and not quite so deep as that of the African Negroes; their hair, however, is perfectly woolly, and it is clotted or divided into small parcels, like that of the Hottentots, and smeared with a kind of red paint. Their noses, though not flat, are broad and full; their eyes are of a middling size, with the white less clear than in us. Their teeth are broad, but not equal, nor well set; and not of so true a white as is usual among people of a black colour. Their mouths are rather wide; but this appearance seems heightened by wearing their beards long, and clotted

seen in the
unknown, li-
ntly clouded
of a brown

and at least as
ays, nurses,
i some small
r than those
w soles and
them a new
unexpectedly,
lled *atherina*

l some other
bers of sea-
s of sponge;
by the sea,
xture
d upon the
, which, as
y of taking
out this fort

considerable
butterflies,
ted. There
l flies; fe-
but the last

earful, and
ir colour is
the African
woolly, and
that of the
int. Their
eir eyes are
than in us.
l fet; and
of a black
is appear-
long, and
clotted

otted with paint, in the same manner as the hair on their
sads.

The following is a specimen of Van Diemen's Land
vocabulary.

Quadne,	<i>A woman.</i>
Eve'rai,	<i>The eye.</i>
Muidje,	<i>The nose.</i>
Ka'my,	<i>The teeth, mouth, or tongue.</i>
Lae'renne,	<i>A small bird, a native of the woods here.</i>
Koy'gee,	<i>The ear.</i>
No'onga,	<i>Elevated scars on the body.</i>
Teegera,	<i>To eat.</i>
Toga'rago,	<i>I must be gone, or, I will go.</i>

I have no doubt but we shall find, on a diligent in-
quiry, and when opportunities offer to collect accurately
sufficient number of these words, and to compare
them, that all the people from New Holland, Eastward
to Easter island, have been derived from the same com-
mon root.

At eight o'clock in the morning of the 30th of Janu-
ary, a light breeze springing up at West, they weighed
anchor and put to sea from Adventure Bay.

They pursued an Eastward course, till the night of
the 6th of February, when a marine belonging to the
discovery fell over-board, and was never seen after-
ward. This was the second misfortune of the kind
that had happened to Captain Clerke since he left Eng-
land.

On the 10th of February, at four in the afternoon,
they discovered the land of New Zealand. The part
they saw proved to be Rock's Point, about eight or nine
leagues distant.

They arrived there the next morning, and anchored
in Queen Charlotte Sound. Soon after, several canoes
filled with inhabitants came along-side of the ships, but
very few of them would venture on board; which ap-
peared the more extraordinary, as Captain Cook was
well known to them all. There was one man in particu-
lar amongst them, whom he had treated with remarka-
ble kindness, during the whole of his stay when he was
at here. Yet now, neither professions of friendship, nor
presents,

resents, could prevail upon him to come into the ship. This shyness was to be accounted for only on this supposition, that the natives were apprehensive they had revisited their country, in order to revenge the death of Captain Furneaux's people, many of whom had been destroyed here.

On the 13th they set up two tents, one from each ship, on the same spot they had pitched them formerly. The observatories were at the same time erected; and Messrs. King and Bayly began their operations immediately, to find the rate of the time-keeper, and to make other observations. Some of the men were employed in procuring wood and water, others in getting grass for the cattle; spruce beer was also brewed, and every necessary attention to the ships and rigging was attended to.

It is curious to observe with what facility they build; numbers came round the tents as soon as they were pitched, with their little huts, which they erect with great expedition. Captain Cook says, he has seen above twenty of them erected on a spot of ground, that, not an hour before, was covered with shrubs and plants. They generally bring some part of the materials with them, the rest they find upon the premises.

Their articles of commerce were, curiosities, fish, and women. The two first always came to a good market; which the latter did not. The seamen had taken a kind of dislike to these people; and were either unwilling, or afraid, to associate with them; which produced this good effect, that none of the men quitted their station to go to them.

Amongst our occasional visitors, was a chief named Kahoora, who was said to have headed a party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people, and himself killed Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded. To judge of the character of Kahoora, by what was reported from many of his countrymen, he seemed to be more feared than beloved amongst them. Not satisfied with saying he was a very bad man, some of them even importuned to have him killed; and they were not a little surprised that no attention was paid to them, for, according to their ideas of equity, this ought to have been done. But if their advice had been followed, the whole place might have been

into the ship.
 n this suppo-
 hey had re-
 the death of
 had been de-

m each ship,
 nerly. The
 and Messrs.
 mediately, to
 ke other ob-
 ed in procur-
 s for the cat-
 necessary at-
 l to.

y they build;
 s they were
 y erect with
 as seen above
 that, rot an
 ants. They
 ith them, the

ies, fish, and
 ood market;
 taken a kind
 unwilling, or
 ced this good
 ation to go to

chief named
 arty that cut
 f killed Mr.
 dge of the
 l from many
 are than be-
 ing he was a
 ned to have
 rised that no
 to their ideas
 But if their
 might have
 been

been depopulated; for the people of every hamlet com-
 plained of each other.

On the 16th five boats were sent up the Sound, to pro-
 vide food for the cattle.

As they returned, they visited Grass Cove. Here Cap-
 tain Cook met with his old friend Pedro, mentioned fre-
 quently in the former Voyage. He, and another of his
 countrymen received them on the beach, armed with the
 pa-too and spear. Whether this form of reception was
 a mark of their courtesy or of their fear, is doubtful.
 However, if they had any apprehensions, a few presents
 soon removed them, and brought down to the beach two
 or three more of the family; but the greatest part of
 them remained out of sight.

Whilst they were at this place, their curiosity prompted
 them to inquire into the circumstances attending the me-
 lancholy fate of their countrymen; * and Omai was made
 use of as their interpreter for this purpose. Pedro, and
 the rest of the natives present, answered all the questions
 that were put to them on the subject without reserve,
 and like men who are under no dread of punishment for
 a crime of which they are not guilty. Captain Cook
 already knew that none of them had been concerned in
 the unhappy transaction. They told him, that while
 our people were at dinner, surrounded by several of the
 natives, some of the latter stole, or snatched from them,
 some bread and fish, for which they were beat. This
 being resented, a quarrel ensued, and two New Zea-
 landers were shot dead, by the only two musquets that
 were fired. For before our people had time to discharge
 a third, or to load again those that had been fired, the
 natives rushed in upon them, overpowered them with
 numbers, and put them all to death. Pedro and his com-
 panions, besides relating the history of the massacre,
 pointed out the very spot that was the scene of it. It
 was at the corner of the cove on the right-hand. They
 pointed to the place of the sun, to mark what hour of
 the day it happened; and, according to this, it must
 have been late in the afternoon. They also shewed the
 place where the boat lay; and it appeared to be about

C 2

two

* Vide Captain Cook's former Voyage.

two hundred yards distant from that where the crew were seated. One of their number, a black servant of Capt. Furneaux, was left in the boat to take care of her.

Captain Cook was afterwards told that this black was the cause of the quarrel, which was said to have happened thus: One of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the Negro gave him a severe blow with a stick. The cries of the fellow being heard by his countrymen at a distance, they imagined he was killed, and immediately began the attack on our people; who, before they had time to reach the boat, or to arm themselves against the unexpected impending danger, fell a sacrifice to the fury of their savage assailants. What became of the boat I never could learn. Some said she was pulled to pieces and burnt; others told us that she was carried, they knew not whither, by a party of strangers.

In the evening, all the boats being loaded with grass, celery, scurvy-grass, &c. returned with difficulty to the ships, as it blew a perfect storm.

On the 20th, there was another storm, of shorter duration, but more violent.

By this time more than two-thirds of the inhabitants of the Sound had settled themselves near the tents, and great numbers of them daily frequented the ships while the people there were melting some seal blubber. No Greenlander was ever sonder of train-oil, than they seemed to be. They relished the very skimmings of the kettle; but a little of the stinking oil was a delicious feast.

Having got on board as much hay and grass as was judged sufficient to serve the cattle till their arrival at Otaheite, and having completed the wood and water of both ships, on the 24th they weighed anchor, and stood out of the cove.

While they were unmooring and getting under sail, many of the natives came to take their leave, or rather to obtain, if they could, some additional presents. Accordingly, Captain Cook gave to Matahouah and Tomatongaouoranuc, two of their Chiefs, two pigs, a boar and a sow. They made a promise not to kill them; though it was feared they would not keep it. The animals which Captain Furneaux sent on shore here, and which soon after fell into the hands of the natives, they were

the crew were
want of Capt.
of her.

his black was
have happen-
ething out of
with a stick.
countrymen
, and iname-
, before they
elves against
sacrifice to the
ame of the
was pulled to
was carried,
ers.

d with grass,
ficulty to the

of shorter

habitants of
ts, and great
s while the
No Green-
y seemed to
the kettle;
feast.

grass as was
pir arrival at
nd water of
, and stood

under sail,
e, or rather
cents. Ac-
and Toma-
igs, a boat
kill them;

The ani-
e here, and
tives, they
were

were told, had all died; but it was afterward said, many of the poultry and several of the sows were living. They had not been long at anchor near Motuara, before three or four canoes, filled with natives, came off to them from the South East side of the Sound; and a brisk trade was carried on with them for the curiosities of this place, in one of these canoes was Kahoorā, leader of the party who cut off the crew of the Adventure's boat. This was the third time he had visited the ships without betraying the smallest appearance of fear. Omai presently pointed him out, and solicited Captain King to shoot him. Not satisfied with this, he addressed himself to Kahoorā, threatening to be his executioner, if he ever presumed to visit the ships again.

The New Zealander paid so little regard to these threats, that he returned, the next morning, with his whole family, men, women, and children, to the number of twenty or upwards. Omai then renewed his solicitations, saying, "Why do you not kill him? You tell me, if a man kills another in England, that he is hanged for it. This man has killed ten, and yet you will not kill him; though many of his countrymen desire it, and it would be very good." Omai's arguments, though specious enough, having no weight with the Captain, desired him to ask the Chief, why he had killed Captain Burneaux's people? At this question, Kahoorā folded his arms, hung down his head, looked like one caught in a trap, and as if he expected certain death. But no longer was he assured of his safety, than he became cheerful. He did not, however, seem willing to give an answer to the question that had been put to him, till he was again and again assured of safety. Then he ventured to own, that one of his countrymen having brought a stone hatchet to barter, the man to whom it was offered took it, and would neither return it, nor give any thing for it; on which the owner of it snatched up the bread as an equivalent; and then the quarrel began.

A youth about seventeen or eighteen offered to accompany Omai to Otaheite; his name was Taweharooa; and another youth, about ten years old, named Kokoa, attended him as a servant. The parents of both consented, and parted with them with great indifference.

From observations, and from the information of Taweharooa, and others, it appears that the New Zealanders must live under perpetual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; there being few of their tribes that have not, as they think, sustained wrongs from some other tribe. Their method of executing their horrible designs, is by stealing upon the adverse party in the night; and if they find them unguarded they kill all indiscriminately; not even sparing the women and children. When the massacre is completed, they either feast themselves on the spot, or carry off as many of the dead bodies as they can, and devour them at home, with acts of brutality too shocking to be described.

No people can have a quicker sense of an injury done to them, and none are more ready to resent it. But, at the same time, they will take an opportunity of being insolent when they think there is no danger of punishment.

Their public contentions are very frequent; before they begin they join in a war song, by which they raise their passion to frantic fury, attended with the most horrid distortion of their eyes, mouths, and tongues, to strike terror into their enemies; which, to those who have not been accustomed to such a practice, makes them appear more like demons than men, and would almost chill the boldest with fear. To this succeeds a circumstance, almost foreign in their fierce demeanor, horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature; which is, cutting in pieces, even before being perfectly dead, the bodies of their enemies, and, after dressing them on a fire, devouring the flesh, not only without reluctance, but with peculiar satisfaction.

P A R T II

From leaving New Zealand in February 1777, to their Arrival at Otabeita in July following.

THE ships left New Zealand on the 25th of February, and the two young adventurers repented of their conduct as soon as they lost the sight of land; but at length they forgot both their country and friends, and became as much attached to the people on board as if they had been born amongst them.

On the 29th of March, at ten in the morning, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. It was soon found to be an island of no great extent.

They perceived it was inhabited, and saw several people, on a point of land they had passed, wading to the reef, where, as they found the ship leaving them quickly, they remained. But others, who soon appeared in different parts, followed her course; and sometimes several of them collected into small bodies, who made a shouting noise all together, nearly after the manner of the inhabitants of New Zealand.

Between seven and eight o'clock, they were at the West North West part of the island, and, being near the shore, could perceive with their glasses that several of the natives were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some on board interpreted their attitudes, with invitations to land. Most of them appeared naked, except having a sort of girdle, which, being brought up between the thighs, covered that part of the body. But some of them had pieces of cloth of different colours, white, striped, or checquered, which they wore as a garment, thrown about their shoulders; and almost all of them had a white wrapper about their heads, not much unlike a turban.

turban. They were of a tawny colour, and of a middling stature.

At this time, a small canoe was launched in a great hurry from the further end of the beach, and a man getting into it, put off, as with a view to reach the ship. On perceiving this they brought to, that they might receive the visit; but the man's resolution failing, he soon returned toward the beach, where, after some time, another man joined him in the canoe, and then they both came near. They stopt short, however, as if afraid to approach, until Omai, who addressed them in the Otaheite language, in some measure quieted their apprehensions. They then came near enough to take some beads and nails, which were tied to a piece of wood, and thrown into the canoe. They seemed afraid to touch these things, and put the piece of wood aside without untying them. This, however, might arise from superstition; for Omai told us, that when they saw us offering them presents, they asked something for their *Eatooa*, or god. Still, however, they would not venture on board; but told Omai, who understood them pretty well, that their countrymen on shore had given them this caution, at the same time directing them to inquire, from whence the ship came, and to learn the name of the Captain. Captain Cook on his part inquired the name of the island, which they called *Mangya* or *Mangeea*; and sometimes added to it *Nooe, nai, nai-wa*. The name of their Chief, they said, was *Orooaeka*.

One of these men, whose name was *Mourooa*, was lusty and well made, but not very tall; his features were agreeable, and his disposition seemingly no less so; for he made several droll gesticulations, which indicated both good-nature and a share of humour. His colour was nearly of the same cast with that common to the most southern Europeans. The other man was not so handsome. Both of them had strong, straight hair, of a jet colour, tied together on the crown of the head with a bit of cloth. They wore such girdles as were perceived about those on shore; and were a substance made from the *Morus papyrifera*, in the same manner as at the other islands of this ocean. Their beards were long, and the inside of their arms, from the shoulder to the elbow, and

some

nd of a mid-

d. in a great
d a man get-
ch the ship.
ey might re-
ing, he soon
ne time, ano-
men they both
if afraid to
in the Ota-
ir apprehen-
e some beads
, and thrown
these things,
ntying them.

n; for Omai
em presents,
god. Still,
d; but told
at their coun-
, at the same
nce the ship
in. Captain
land, which
etimes added
Chief, they

ourooa, was
features were
o less so; for
adicated both
colour was
to the most
not so hand-
hair, of a jet
ad with a bit
ceived about
de from the
at the other
ong, and the
e elbow, and
some

Some other parts, were punctured or *sattooed*, after the manner of the inhabitants of almost all the other islands in the South Sea. The lobe of their ears was pierced, or rather slit; and to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which he had received from them; and the same person had two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted, hanging about his neck, which was the only ornament observed. The canoe they came in (which was the only one they saw) was not above ten feet long, and very narrow; but both strong and neatly made. The lower part of the canoe was of white wood; but the upper was black, and their paddles, made of wood of the same colour, not above three feet long, broad at one end, and stunted. They paddled either end of the canoe forward indifferently; and only turned about their faces to paddle the contrary way.

As soon as the ships were in a proper station, about ten o'clock, two boats were ordered out, one of them from the *Discovery*, to sound the coast, and to endeavour to find a landing place. With this view Captain Cook went in one of them himself, taking with him such articles to give the natives as he thought might serve to gain their good-will. He had no sooner put off from the ship, than the canoe, with the two men, which had left them not long before, paddled towards the boat; and, having come along-side, Mourooa stepped into her, without being asked, and without a moment's hesitation.

While they were thus employed in reconnoitring the shore, great numbers of the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. Mourooa, who was now in Captain Cook's boat, probably thinking that this warlike appearance hindered them from landing, ordered the natives to retire back, and many of them complied. So great was the curiosity of several of them, that they took to the water, and swimming off to the boats, came on board them without reserve. Nay it was found difficult to keep them out; and much more difficult to prevent their carrying off every thing they could lay their hands upon. Mourooa kept his place in the boat, and went, not without fear, on board the ship.

The

The cattle, and other new objects, that presented themselves to him there, did not strike him with so much surprise as one might have expected. Perhaps his mind was too much taken up about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. It is certain, that he seemed very uneasy. Little new information could be got from him; a boat was therefore ordered to carry him in toward the land. As soon as he got out of the cabin, he happened to stumble over one of the goats. His curiosity now overcoming his fear, he stopped, looked at it, and asked Omai, what bird this was? and not receiving an immediate answer from him, he repeated the question, to some of the people upon deck. The boat having conveyed him pretty near to the surf, he leaped into the sea, and swam ashore. He had no sooner landed, than the multitude of his countrymen gathered round him, as if with an eager curiosity to learn from him what he had seen. As soon as the boat returned, she was hoisted in, and then they sailed to the Northward.

It was painful to them to leave this island without acquiring any knowledge of it; a place which seemed capable of supplying them amply, as every thing must be in great plenty. It might, however, be a matter of curiosity to know, particularly, their method of subsistence; for Mourroa said, that they had no animals, as hogs and dogs, both of which, however, they had heard of; but acknowledged they had plantains, bread-fruit, and taro. The only birds seen, were some white egg-birds, terns, and noddies; and one white heron on the shore.

After leaving Mangeea, on the afternoon of the 30th, they continued their course Northward all that night, and till noon on the 31st; when they again saw land North East by North, distant eight or ten leagues; and next morning, at eight o'clock, they got abreast of its North end. Two armed boats from the Resolution, and one from the Discovery, under the command of Lieutenant Gore, were sent to look for anchoring-ground, and a landing-place. In the mean time, they plied up under the island with the ships.

Just as the boats were putting off, canoes were observed coming from the shore. They went first to the Discovery, she being the nearest ship. It was not long

presented them
 so much sur-
 his mind was
 allow him to
 e seemed very
 ot from him;
 n toward the
 he happened
 curiosity now
 it, and asked
 ng an imme-
 estion, to some
 ing conveyed
 the sea, and
 than the mul-
 um, as if with
 t he had seen
 oisted in, and

d without ac-
 which seemed
 thing must be
 matter of curio-
 of subsistence;
 s, as hogs and
 heard of; but
 quit, and taro-
 y-birds, terns,
 here.

n of the 30th
 ll that night
 gain saw land,
 leagues; and
 abreast of its
 esolution, and
 and of Lieu-
 oring-ground,
 they plyed up

oes were ob-
 at first to the
 t was not long
 after

ter, when three of these canoes came along-side of the
 resolution, each conducted by one man. They are long
 and narrow, and supported by outriggers. The stern is
 elevated about three or four feet, something like a ship's
 main-post. Some knives, beads, and other trifles, were
 conveyed to our visitors; and they gave us a few cocoa-
 nuts, upon our asking for them. But they did not part
 with them by way of exchange for what they had re-
 ceived from us; for they seemed to have no idea of bar-
 tering.

With a little persuasion, one of them made his canoe
 drift to the ship, and came on board; and the other two,
 encouraged by his example, soon followed him. Their
 whole behaviour marked that they were quite at their
 ease; and felt no sort of apprehension of our detaining,
 or using them ill.

After their departure another canoe arrived, conducted
 by a man who brought a bunch of plantains as a present;
 and inquiring for Captain Cook by name, having learnt it from
 Omai, who was sent before in one of the boats. In re-
 turn for this civility, he received an axe, and a piece of
 red cloth; and he paddled back to the shore well satis-
 fied. It was afterward understood from Omai, that this
 present had been sent from the King, or principal Chief
 of the island.

Not long after, a double canoe, in which were twelve
 men, came toward them. As they drew near the ship, they
 uttered some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of
 their number first standing up, and giving the word be-
 fore each repetition. When they had finished their so-
 nnet chant, they came along-side, and asked for the
 chief. As soon as the Captain shewed himself, a pig
 and a few cocoa-nuts were conveyed up into the ship;
 and the principal person in the canoe made an additional
 present of a piece of matting, as soon as he and his com-
 panions got on board.

The visitors were conducted into the cabin, and to
 other parts of the ship. Some objects seemed to strike
 them with a degree of surprize; but nothing fixed their
 attention for a moment. They were afraid to come near
 the cows and horses; nor did they form the least concep-
 tion of their nature. But the sheep and goats did not
 surpris

surpass the limits of their ideas; for they gave us to understand, that they knew them to be birds. It will appear rather incredible, that human ignorance could ever make so strange a mistake; there not being the most distant similitude between a sheep or a goat, and any winged animal.

The people in these canoes were in general of a middling size, and not unlike those of Mangeea; though several were of a blacker cast than any we saw there. Their hair was tied on the crown of the head, or flowing loose about the shoulders; and though in some it was of a frizzling disposition, yet, for the most part, that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Their features were various, and some of the young men rather handsome. Like those of Mangeea, they had girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which, being brought betwixt their thighs, covered the adjoining parts. Ornaments, composed of a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the night-shade, were worn about their necks.

Soon after day-break, some canoes were observed coming off to the ships, and one of them directed its course to the Resolution. In it was a hog, with some plantains and cocoa-nuts; for which the people who brought them demanded a dog from us, and refused every other thing that was offered in exchange. To gratify these people, Omai parted with a favourite dog he had brought from England; and with this acquisition they departed highly satisfied.

Mr. Gore was dispatched with three boats; two from the Resolution, and one from the Discovery. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him, and Omai went with him in his boat as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, it was noon before they could work up to it. They then saw the three boats riding at their grapplings, just without the surf, and a prodigious number of the natives on the shore, abreast of them. By this it was concluded, that Mr. Gore had landed, and they became impatient to know the event. In order to observe their motions, and to be ready to give them such assistance as they might want, Captain Cook kept as

near the shore as was prudent. Some of the islanders, now and then, came off to the ships in their canoes, with a few cocoa-nuts, which they exchanged for whatever was offered to them.

These occasional visits served to lessen their solicitude about the people who had landed. At length, a little before sun-set, they had the satisfaction of seeing the boats put off. When they got on board, it appeared that Mr. Gore, Omai, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Burney, were the only persons who had landed. *The transactions of the day were fully reported by Mr. Anderson as follows :*

“ We rowed toward a small sandy beach, upon which a great number of the natives had assembled. Several swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts; and Omai, with their countrymen, whom we had with us in the boats, made them sensible of our wish to land.

Mr. Burney, the first Lieutenant of the Discovery, and I, went in one canoe, a little time before the other; and our conductors, watching attentively the motions of the surf, landed us safely upon the reef. An islander took hold of each of us, obviously with an intention to support us in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where several of the others met us, holding the green boughs, of a species of *Mimosa*, in their hands, and saluted us by applying their noses to ours.

We were conducted from the beach amidst a crowd of people, who flocked with eager curiosity to look at us; and would have prevented our proceeding, had not some men, who seemed to have authority, dealt blows, with little distinction, amongst them, to keep them off. We were then led up an avenue of cocoa-palms; and soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, armed with clubs. After walking a little way among these, we found a person who appeared to be a Chief, sitting on the ground cross-legged, cooling himself with a sort of triangular fan, made from a leaf of the cocoa-palm. In his ears were large bunches of

beautiful red feathers; but he had no other mark to distinguish him from the rest of the people, though they all obeyed him.

We proceeded still amongst the men armed with clubs, and came to a second Chief, who set fanning himself, and ornamented as the first. In the same manner, we were conducted to a third Chief, who seemed older than the two former. He also was sitting, and adorned with red feathers; and after saluting him as we had done the others, he desired us both to sit down. Which we were very willing to do, being pretty well fatigued.

In a few minutes, we saw, at a small distance, about twenty young women, ornamented as the Chiefs, with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and serious air, sung by them all. We got up, and went forward to see them; and though we must have been strange objects to them, they continued their dance, without paying the least attention to us. Their motions and song were performed in exact concert. In general, they were rather stout than slender, with black hair flowing in ringlets down the neck, and of an olive complexion. Their eyes were of a deep black, and each countenance expressed a degree of complacency and modesty, peculiar to the sex in every part of the world; but perhaps more conspicuous here, where Nature presented us with her productions in the fullest perfection, unbiassed in sentiment by custom, or unrestrained in manner by art. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed; for as their dress consisted only of a piece of glazed cloth fastened about the waist, and scarcely reaching so low as the knees, in many we had an opportunity of observing every part.

As we supposed the ceremony of being introduced to the Chiefs was at an end, we began to look about for Mr. Gore and Omai; and though the crowd would hardly suffer us to move, we at length found them

them coming up, as much incommoded by the number of people as we had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three Chiefs, whose names were Otteroo, Taroe, and Fatouweera. Omai mentioned to them our views in coming on shore, when he was told we must wait till next day.

They now seemed to take some pains to separate us from each other; every one of us having his circle, to surround and gaze at him: and when I told the Chief with whom I sat, that I wanted to speak to Omai, he peremptorily refused my request. At the same time, I found the people began to steal several trifling things which I had in my pocket; and when I took the liberty of complaining to the Chief of this treatment, he justified it. From these circumstances, I now entertained apprehensions that they might have formed the design of detaining us amongst them.

Mr. Burney happening to come to the place where I was, I mentioned my suspicions to him; and, to put it to the test, whether they were well-founded, we attempted to get to the beach. But we were stopped when about half way, by some men, who told us, that we must go back to the place we had left. On coming up, we found Omai entertaining the same apprehensions. But he had, as he fancied, an additional reason for being afraid; for he had observed, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating; and he could assign no other reason for this, than that they meant to roast and eat us, as is practised by the inhabitants of New Zealand. Nay, he went so far as to ask them the question; at which they were greatly surpris'd, asking, in return, whether that was a custom with us?

In this manner we were detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes together and sometimes separated, but always in a crowd; who, not satisfied with gazing at us, frequently desired us to

uncover parts of our skin ; the sight of which commonly produced a general murmur of admiration. At the same time, they did not omit these opportunities of rifling our pockets ; and, at last, one of them snatched a small bayonet from Mr. Gore, which hung in its sheath by his side.

Upon our urging again the business we came upon, they gave us to understand, that we must stay and eat with them ; and a pig which we saw, soon after, lying near the oven, which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehension of being put into it himself ; and made us think it might be intended for our repast. The Chief also promised to send some people to procure food for the cattle ; but it was not till pretty late in the afternoon, that we saw them return with a few plantain trees, which they carried to our boats. A piece of the young hog that had been dressed, was set before us, of which we were desired to eat. Our appetites, however, had failed, from the fatigue of the day ; and though we did eat a little to please them, it was without satisfaction to ourselves.

It being now near sun-set, we told them it was time to go on board. This they allowed ; and sent down to the beach the remainder of the victuals that had been dressed, to be carried with us to the ships. They put us on board our boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plaintains, and other provisions, which they had brought ; and we rowed to the ships, very well pleased that we had at last got out of the hands of our troublesome masters.

We regretted much, that our restrained situation gave us so little opportunity of making observations on the country. For, during the whole day, we were seldom an hundred yards from the place where we were introduced to the Chiefs, on landing ; and, consequently, were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that presented itself, worthy of our notice, was the number of people ;
which

which com-
admiration,
se opportu-
last, one of
Mr. Gore,

came up-
ve must stay
e saw, soon
had prepa-
rehension of
us think it
e Chief also
food for the
n the after-
ew plantain

A piece of
as set before
Our appe-
tigue of the
please them,

them it was
d; and sent
the victuals
h us to the
ts, with the
fens, which
e ships, very
of the hands

ned situation
y observati-
hole day, we
place where
on landing;
e surround-
ented itself,
of people;
which

which must have been, at least, two thousand. For those who welcomed us on the shore, bore no proportion to the multitude we found amongst the trees, on proceeding a little way up.

We could also observe, that, except a few, those we had hitherto seen on board, were of the lower class. For a great number of those we now met with, had a superior dignity in their air, and were of a much whiter cast. In general, they had their hair tied on the crown of the head, long, black, and of a most luxuriant growth. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, of a complexion as delicate as that of the women, and, to appearance, of a disposition as amiable.

The wife of one of the Chiefs appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been presented to her husband; and seemed to carry it with great tenderness, suckling it much after the manner of our women. Another Chief introduced his daughter, who was young and beautiful; but appeared with all the timidity natural to the sex; though she gazed on us with a kind of anxious concern, that seemed to struggle with her fear, and to express her astonishment at so unusual a sight. Others advanced with a firmness, and, indeed, were less reserved than we expected; but behaved with a becoming modesty. We did not observe any personal deformities amongst either sex; except in a few who had scars of broad superficial ulcers, remaining on the face and other parts.

About a third part of the men were armed with clubs and spears; and, probably, these were only the persons who had come from a distance, as many of them had small baskets, mats, and other things, fastened to the ends of their weapons. The clubs were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood, lance-shaped at the end, but much broader, with the edge nicely scolloped, and the whole neatly polished.

Though the landing of the gentlemen proved the means of enriching the Journal with the foregoing particulars, the principal object was, in a great measure, unattained; for the day was spent without getting any one thing from the island worth mentioning.

Omai was Mr. Gore's interpreter, but that was not the only service he performed that day. He was asked by the natives, a great many questions concerning the ships, country, and the sort of arms which they used; and according to the account he gave, his answers were not a little upon the marvellous. As, for instance, he told them, that the English had ships as large as their island; on board which were instruments of war (describing the guns) of such dimensions, that several people might sit within them; and that one of them was sufficient to crush the whole island at one shot. This led them to enquire of him, what sort of guns we actually had in the two ships. He said, that though they were but small, in comparison with those he had just described, yet, with such as they were, it would be very easy, at the distance the ships were from the shore, to destroy the island, and kill every soul in it. They persevered in their enquiries, to know by what means this could be done; and Omai explained the matter as well as he could. He happened luckily to have a few cartridges in his pocket. These he produced; the balls, and the gunpowder which was to set them in motion, were submitted to inspection; and, to supply the defects of his description, an appeal was made to the senses of the spectators. It has been mentioned above, that one of the Chiefs had ordered the multitude to form themselves into a circle. This furnished Omai with a convenient stage for his exhibition. In the center of this amphitheatre, the inconsiderable quantity of gunpowder, collected from his cartridges, was properly disposed upon the ground, and, by means of a bit of burning wood from the oven, where dinner was dressing, set on fire. The sudden blast; and loud report, the mingled flame and smoke, that instantly succeeded, now filled the whole assembly with astonishment; they no longer doubted, but gave full credit to all that Omai had said.

proved the
going parti-
measure, un-
ting any one

that was not
e was asked
ncerning the
they used;
answers were
instance, he
rge as their
war (descri-
veral people
n was suffi-
c. This led

we actually
a they were
ft described,
ery easy, at
destroy the
ered in their
ld be done;
could. He
his pocket.
wder which
inspection;
an appeal
It has been
ordered the
his furnish-
hibition. In
rable quan-
ridges, was
means of a
dinner was
loud report,
succeeded,
ment; they
that Omai

If

If it had not been for the terrible ideas they conceived of the guns of the ships, from this specimen of their mode of operation, it was thought that they would have detained the gentlemen all night. For Omai assured them, that if he and his companions did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the principal (meaning Captain Cook) would land upon the island, with a number of men, and destroy them. And as they stood in nearer the land in the evening, than they had done any time before, of which position of the ships they were observed to take great notice, they, probably, thought they were meditating this; they therefore suffered their guests to depart, under the expectation, however, of seeing them again on shore next morning. But they were too sensible of the risk they had already run, to think of a repetition of the experiment.

Omai found three of his countrymen here, who were cast away in crossing from Otaheite to a neighbouring island called Ulietea; a violent storm drove them upon this coast.

The landing of the gentlemen on this island, though they failed in the object of it, cannot but be considered as a very fortunate circumstance. It has proved the means of bringing to knowledge a matter of fact, not only very curious, but very instructive. The account of the above three people will serve to explain, better than a thousand conjectures of speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the earth, and in particular how the islands of the South Sea, may have been first peopled; especially those that lie remote from any inhabited continent, or from each other.

Light airs and calms having prevailed, by turns, all the night of the 3d of April, the Easterly swell had carried the ships some distance from Watecoo, before day-break. But as they had failed in their object of procuring some effectual supply, they quitted it, without regret, and steered for another island.

In a neighboring uninhabited island, they procured a hundred cocoa-nuts and grass for the cattle.

The only birds seen here were a beautiful cuckoo, of a chestnut brown, variegated with black, which was shot. And upon the shore, were some egg-birds; a small sort
of

of curlew; blue and white herons; and great numbers of noddies; which last, at this time, laid their eggs, a little farther up, on the ground.

One of the people caught a lizard, of a most forbidding aspect, though small, running up a tree; and many, of another sort, were seen. The bushes toward the sea, were frequented by infinite numbers of a sort of moth, elegantly speckled with red, black, and white. There were also several other sorts of moths, as well as some pretty butterflies; and a few other insects.

Although Hervey's Island, discovered in 1773, was not above fifteen leagues distant, yet they did not get sight of it till day break in the morning. As they drew near it, at eight o'clock, they observed several canoes put off toward the ships. This was a sight that, indeed, surprized them, as no signs of inhabitants were seen when the island was first discovered; which might be owing to a pretty brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes venturing out, as the ships passed to leeward; whereas now they were to windward.

As the ships approached, several of the canoes, all double ones, came near them. There were from three to six men in each. They stopped at the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship; and it was some time before Omai could prevail upon them to come along-side; but no intreaties could induce any of them to venture on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour, by no means indicated a disposition to trust them, or to treat them well. They were afterwards detected in an attempt to take some oars out of the Discovery's boat that lay along-side, and struck a man who endeavoured to prevent them. They also cut away, with a shell, a net with meat, which hung over that ship's stern, and absolutely refused to restore it; though it was afterward purchased from them. They shewed a knowledge of bartering, and sold some fish they had (amongst which was an extraordinary flounder, spotted like porphyry; and a cream-coloured eel, spotted with black) for small nails, of which they were immoderately fond, and called them *goore*. They caught with the greatest avidity, bits of paper, or any thing else that was thrown

great numbers
their eggs, a

most forbid-
ee; and ma-
es toward the
of a sort of
and white.
ns, as well as
fts.

1773, was not
not get fight
ey drew near
canoes put off
indeed, fur-
ere seen when
t be owing to
evented their
to leeward;

e canoes, all
e from three
e distance of
it was some
m to come
any of them
y behaviour,
them, or to
ted in an at-
y's boat that
eavoured to
shell, a net
n, and abso-
s afterward
nowledge of
ongst which
rphry; and
for small
d, and cal-
eatest avidi-
was thrown
to

to them; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they made no scruple to swim after it.

These people seemed to differ as much in person, as in disposition, from the natives of Watecoo; though the distance between the two islands is not very great. Their colour was of a deeper cast; and several had a fierce, rugged aspect, resembling the natives of New Zealand.

Having but very little wind, it was one o'clock before they drew near the North West part of the island; when Lieutenant King was sent with two armed boats to examine the coast.

At three o'clock, the boats returned; and Mr. King informed us, "That there was no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could only land on the outer edge of the reef, which lay about a quarter of a mile from the dry land. He said, that a number of the natives came down upon the reef, armed with long pikes and clubs, as if they intended to oppose his landing. And yet, when he drew near enough, they threw some cocoa-nuts to the people, and invited them to come on shore; though at the very same time, he observed that the women were very busy bringing down a fresh supply of spears and darts. But, as he had no motive to land, he did not give them an opportunity to use them."

April the 7th, they steered West by South, with a fine breeze Easterly, intending to proceed first to Middleburgh or Eooa; but the wind changing they went into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands, discovered in 1774, during the last voyage, that, if necessity required it, they might have recourse to them.

At day-break, in the morning of the 13th, they saw Palmerston Island, bearing West by South, distant about five leagues. However, they did not get up with it till eight o'clock the next morning: when four boats were sent, with an officer in each, to search the coast for the most convenient landing-place. For, now, they were under an absolute necessity of procuring from this island, some food for the cattle; otherwise they must have been lost.

About one o'clock, one of the boats came on board, laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa-nut trees; which, at this time, was a feast for the cattle. The same

same boat brought a message from Mr. Gore, mentioning that there was plenty of such produce upon the island. Before evening, Captain Cook went ashore in a small boat, accompanied by Captain Clerke.

They found every body hard at work, and the landing place to be in a small creek. Upon the bushes that front the sea, or even farther in, they found a great number of men of war birds, Tropic birds, and two sorts of boobies, which, at this time, were laying their eggs, and so tame, that they suffered themselves to be taken by the hand.

At one part of the reef, which looks into, or bounds the lake that is within, there was a large bed of coral, almost even with the surface, which afforded, perhaps, one of the most enchanting prospects that nature has any where produced. Its base was fixed to the shore, but reached so far in, that it could not be seen; so that it seemed to be suspended in the water, which deepened so suddenly, that, at the distance of a few yards, there might be seven or eight fathoms. The sea was, at this time, quite unruffled; and the sun shining bright, exposed the various sorts of coral in the most beautiful order. But the appearance of these was still inferior to that of the multitude of fishes that glided gently along, seemingly with the most perfect security. The colours of the different sorts were the most beautiful that can be imagined; the yellow, blue, red, black, &c. far exceeding any thing that art can produce.

There were no traces of inhabitants having ever been here, except a small piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, which, probably, may have drifted from some other island. But what is pretty extraordinary, there were several small brown rats on this spot; a circumstance, perhaps, difficult to account for, unless they were imported in the canoe just mentioned.

Next day was spent, as the preceding one had been, in collecting, and bringing on board, food for the cattle. Having got a sufficient supply by sunset, every body was ordered on board. But having little or no wind, they determined to wait, and to employ the next day by endeavouring to get some cocoa-nuts for the people from the next island to leeward, where they could observe that
those

ore, mention
pon the island
ore in a small

nd the landing
fishes that front
reat number of
sorts of booc
r eggs, and fo
e taken by the

ato, or bound
e bed of coral,
ded, perhaps,
nature has any
the shore, but
een; so that it
ch deepened fo

y yards, there
ea was, at this
ng bright, ex
st beautiful or
inferior to that
y along, seem-
colours of the
at can be ima-
far exceeding

ving ever been
as found upon
ted from some
rdinary, there
ot; a circum-
less they were

one had been,
for the cattle.
very body was
o wind, they
ext day by en-
e people from
d observe that
those

ose trees were in much greater abundance than where
ey had already landed. Accordingly next morning they
ere set to work, and found cocoa-nuts in abundance.
imai, who was with them, caught, with a scoop net,
a very short time, as much fish as served the whole
arty on shore for dinner, besides sending some to both
ips. Here were also great abundance of birds, parti-
larly men of war and Tropic birds; so that they fared
umptuously. And it is but doing justice to Omai to say,
at, in these excursions to the uninhabited islands, he
as of the greatest use; for he not only caught the fish,
at dressed these, and the birds that were killed, in an
en, with heated stones, after the fashion of his country,
with a dexterity and good-humour that did him great
edit. There were, besides, some other sorts of shell-
n; particularly the large periwinkle. When the tide
owed, several sharks came in, over the reef, some of
hich were killed.

Upon the whole, they did not spend their time unpro-
ably at this last islo; for they got there about twelve
undred cocoa-nuts, which were equally divided amongst
he whole crew.

In the night between the 24th and 25th they passed
avage Island, which was discovered in 1774. They
eered for the South, and then hauled up for Anna-
ooka, and anchored two leagues distant from it.

Soon after two canoes, the one with four, and the
ther with three men, paddled toward them, and came
long-side without the least hesitation. They brought
ome cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, plantains, and sugar-cane,
hich they bartered with for nails.

Next morning, at four o'clock, Lieutenant King, was
ent with two boats to Komango, to procure refreshments;
nd, at five, made the signal to weigh, in order to ply up
o Annamooka, the wind being unfavourable at North
West.

It was no sooner day-light, than they were visited by
ix or seven canoes from different islands, bringing with
hem, besides fruits and roots, two pigs, several fowls,
ome large wood-pigeons, small rails, and large violet-
coloured coots. All these they exchanged for beads,
ails, hatchets, &c. They had also other articles of com-
merce,

merce, such as pieces of their cloth, fish-hooks, small baskets, musical reeds, and some clubs, spears, and bows. But no curiosities were suffered to be purchased till the ships should be supplied with provisions, and leave given for that purpose. Before mid-day, Mr. King's boat returned with seven hogs, some fowls, a quantity of fruits and roots, also some grass for the cattle. His party was very civilly treated at Komango. The inhabitants did not seem to be numerous; and their huts, which stood close to each other, within a plantain walk, were but indifferent. Not far from them was a pretty large pond of fresh water, tolerably good; but there was not any appearance of a stream. With Mr. King, came on board the Chief of the island, named Tooboulangee; and another, whose name was Taipa. They brought with them a hog, as a present to Capt. Cook, and promised more the next day.

Tooboulangee and Taipa kept their promise, and brought off some hogs. Several others were also procured by bartering, from different canoes, and plenty of fruit.

It was now settled to cast anchor on the North side of this island, where during their last voyage they had found a good place for watering, and they reached it the same day.

Captain Cook landed in the afternoon, with a party of marines; and, at the same time, the horses, and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on shore, and the care of every thing left to Mr. King.

Next day, May 3d, operations on shore began. Some were employed in making hay for the cattle; others in filling water casks at the neighbouring stagnant pool; and a third party in cutting wood.

Nothing worth notice happened on the 4th and 5th, except that, on the former of these days, the Discovery lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks. This misfortune made it necessary to examine the cables of the Resolution, which were found to be unhurt.

On the 6th, they were visited by a great Chief from Tongataboo, whose name was Feenou, and whom Taipa was pleased to introduce to them as King of all the Friendly Isles. All the natives paid their obeisance to him, by bowing their heads as low as his feet. the sole

of which they also touched with each hand, first with the palm, and then with the back part. There could be little room to suspect that a person, received with so much respect, could be any thing less than the King.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook went to pay this great man a visit, having first received a present of two fish from him, brought on board by one of his servants. As soon as he landed, he came up to him. He appeared to be about thirty years of age, tall, but thin, and had more of the European features than any they had yet seen here. After a short stay, the new visiter, and five or six of his attendants, went on board; where each received suitable presents, and were entertained.

In the evening, the Captain attended them on shore in his boat, into which the Chief ordered three hogs to be put, as a return for the presents he had received.

The first day of their arrival at Annamooka, one of the natives had stolen, out of the ship, a large junk axe. Captain Cook now applied to Feenou to exert his authority, to get it restored; and so implicitly was he obeyed, that it was brought on board very soon after he was spoken to. On the 9th, one of the Chiefs was detected carrying out of the ship, concealed under his clothes, the bolt belonging to the spun yarn winch; for which he was sentenced to receive a dozen lashes, and kept confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. After this they were not troubled with thieves of rank. Their servants, or slaves, however, were still employed in this dirty work; and upon them a flogging seemed to make no greater impression, than it would have done upon the main-mast. When any of them happened to be caught in the act, their masters, far from interceding for them, would often advise the Captain to kill them. But they generally escaped without any punishment at all; for they appeared to them to be equally insensible of the shame, and of the pain of corporal chastisement. Captain Clerke, at last, hit upon a mode of treatment, which was thought to have some effect. He put them under the hands of the barber, and completely shaved their heads; thus pointing them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen.

Finding that they had quite exhausted the island of almost every article of food that it afforded, they employed the 11th in moving off, from the shore, the horses, ob-

servatories, and other things; as also the party of the marines who had mounted guard at their station, intending to sail as soon as the Discovery should have recovered her best bower anchor. Feenou assigned many reasons when he found they were going, for their sailing to an island called Hapae, lying North East, and engaged to accompany them thither in person. He carried his point and Hapae was made choice of for their next station. As it had never been visited by any European ships, the examination of it became an object.

The 12th and the 13th, were spent in attempting the recovery of Captain Clerke's anchor, which, after much trouble, was happily accomplished; and on the 14th, in the morning, they got under sail, and left Annamooka.

At day-break on the 15th, being not far from Kao, which is a vast rock of a conic figure, they steered to the East, for the passage between the islands Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at South East. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and remained all day. He brought with him two hogs and a quantity of fruit; and, in the course of the day, several canoes, from the different islands round them, came to barter quantities of the latter article, which was very acceptable, as their stock was nearly expended.

In the course of this night they could plainly see flames issuing from the volcano upon Toofoa, though to no great height.

At day-break in the morning of the 16th, with a gentle breeze at South East, they steered to North East for Hapae, which was now in sight. The wind scanting upon them, they could not fetch the land; so that they were forced to ply to windward. On the 17th, they anchored abreast of a reef.

Soon after the ships were filled with the natives. They brought from the shore, hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for hatchets, knives, nails, beads, and cloth. Captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by Omai and Feenou, and landed at the North part of Lefooga, a little to the right of the ship's station.

The Chief conducted them to a hut, situated close to the sea-beach, which had been brought thither but a few minutes before for their reception. In this Feenou, Omai, and

and Captain Cook were seated. The other Chiefs, and the multitude, composed a circle, on the out-side, fronting them, and they also sat down. Captain Cook was then asked, How long he intended to stay? On saying, Five days, Taipa was ordered to proclaim this to the people. He then harangued them, in a speech mostly dictated by Feenou. The purport of it was, that they were all, both old and young, to look upon them as friends, who intended to remain with them a few days; that, during their stay, they must not steal any thing; and that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships, where they would receive, in exchange for them, such and such things, which he enumerated. Soon after Taipa had finished this address to the assembly, Feenou left them.

Next morning early, Feenou, and Omai, went on board. The object of the visit was to require Captain Cook's presence upon the island. After some time, he accompanied them; and, upon landing, was conducted to the same place where he had been seated the day before; and where he saw a large concourse of people already assembled. He guessed that something more than ordinary was in agitation; but could not tell what, nor could Omai inform him.

He had not long been seated, before near a hundred of the natives appeared in sight, and advanced, laden with yams, bread-fruits, plantains, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes. They deposited their burthens in two heaps, or piles, upon the left, being the side they came from. Soon after, arrived a number of others from the right, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles. To these were tied two pigs, and six fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the several articles upon the left, and another Chief before those upon the right, they being the two Chiefs who had collected them, by order of Feenou, who seemed to be as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka; and, in consequence of his commanding superiority over the Chiefs of Hapae, had laid this tax upon them for the present occasion.

As

As soon as this munificent collection of provisions was laid down in order, and disposed to the best advantage, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a large circle round the whole. Presently after a number of men entered this circle, armed with clubs, made of the green branches of the cocoa-nut tree. These paraded about for a few minutes, and then retired; the one half to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Soon after they successively entered the lists, and entertained them with single combats. One champion, rising up and stepping forward from one side, challenged those of the other side, by expressive gestures, to send one of their body to oppose him. If the challenge was accepted, which was generally the case, the two combatants put themselves in proper attitudes, and then began the engagement, which continued till one or other owned himself conquered, or till their weapons were broken. But what struck them with most surprize, was, to see a couple of lusty wenches step forth, and begin boxing, without the least ceremony, and with as much art as the men. This contest, however, did not last above half a minute, before one of them gave it up. The conquering heroine received the same applause from the spectators, which they bestowed upon the successful combatants of the other sex.

As soon as these diversions were ended, the Chief told Captain Cook, that the heaps of provisions on our right hand were a present to Omai; and that those on our left hand, being about two-thirds of the whole quantity, were given to him. When the provisions were removed on board in the afternoon, there was as much as loaded four boats. This present far exceeded any they had ever received from any of the Sovereigns of the various islands they had visited in the Pacific Ocean. The Captain lost no time in convincing this Chief that he entertained a grateful sense of his generosity, and made him several handsome presents in return.

As Feenou had expressed a desire to see the marines go through their military exercise, the Captain ordered them all ashore, from both ships, in the morning. After they had performed various evolutions, and fired several volleys, with which the numerous spectators seemed well pleased,

pleased, the Chief entertained them, in his turn, with an exhibition, which was performed with a dexterity and exactness, far surpassing the specimen they had given of their military manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, entirely different from any thing they had ever seen. It was performed by men; and one hundred and five persons bore their parts in it. Each of them had in his hand an instrument neatly made, shaped somewhat like a paddle, of two feet and a half in length, with a small handle, and a thin blade; so that they were very light. With these instruments they made many and various flourishes, each of which was accompanied with a different movement. At first, the performers ranged themselves in three lines; and, by various evolutions, each man changed his station in such a manner, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. Nor did they remain long in the same position; for these changes were made by pretty quick transitions.

They had musical instruments, which consisted of two drums, or rather two hollow logs of wood, from which some varied notes were produced, by beating on them with two sticks. It did not however appear, that the dancers were much assisted by these sounds, but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined at the same time. Their song was not destitute of pleasing melody; and all their corresponding motions were executed with so much skill, that the numerous body of dancers seemed to act as if they were one great machine. It was the general opinion, that such a performance would have met with universal applause on a European theatre; and it so far exceeded any attempt that had been made to entertain them, that they seemed to picque themselves upon their superiority.

In order to give them a more favourable opinion of English amusements, and to leave their minds fully impressed with the deepest sense of our superior attainments, Captain Cook directed some fireworks to be got ready; and, after it was dark, played them off in the presence of Feenou, the other Chiefs, and a vast concourse of their people. The water and sky-rockets, in particular, pleased and astonished them beyond all conception; and the scale was now turned.

Curiosity, on both sides, being now sufficiently gratified, Captain Cook began to look about him, and next day took a walk into the island of Lefooga, of which he was desirous to obtain some knowledge. He found it to be, in several respects, superior to Annamooka. The plantations were more numerous, and more extensive. In many places, indeed, toward the sea, especially on the East side, the country is still waste; owing, perhaps, to the sandy soil; as it is much lower than Annamooka, and its surrounding isles. But, toward the middle of the island the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of improved cultivation, were very conspicuous; with very large plantations, inclosed in such a manner, that the fences running parallel to each other, form fine spacious public roads, that would appear ornamental in countries where rural conveniences have been carried to the greatest perfection. There were several spots covered with the paper mulberry-trees; and the plantations, in general, were well stocked with such roots and fruits as are the natural produce of the island. To these Captain Cook made some addition, by sowing the seeds of Indian corn, melons, pumpkins, and the like.

The island is not above seven miles long; and, in some places, not above two or three broad.

Nothing material happened the next day, except that some of the natives stole a tarpaulin, and other things, from off the deck. They were soon missed, and the thieves pursued; but without success.

In the morning of the 23d, as they were going to unmoor, in order to leave the island, Feenou, and his prime-minister Taipa, came along-side in a sailing canoe, and informed them, that they were setting out for Vavaoo, an island, which they said, lies about two days sail to the Northward of Hapae. The object of their voyage, they would have them believe, was to get an additional supply of hogs, and some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry to Otaheite, where they are in high esteem. Feenou assured the Captain, that he should be back in four or five days; and desired him not to sail till his return, when he promised to attend them to Tongataboo; to which he consented, and he immediately set out.

The

The next day their attention was, for some time, taken up with a report, industriously spread by some of the natives, that a ship had arrived at Annamooka since they had left it; they also added, that Toobou, the Chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive these newcomers. However, upon investigation, there appeared no foundation for it. What end the invention of this tale could answer, was not easy to conjecture; unless to get them removed from the one island to the other.

In the Captain's walk he stepped into a house, where a woman was dressing the eyes of a young child, who seemed blind; the eyes being much inflamed, and a thin film spread over them. The instruments she used were two slender wooden probes, with which she had brushed the eyes so as to make them bleed. It seems worth mentioning, that the natives of these islands should attempt an operation of this sort; though he entered the house too late, to describe exactly how this female oculist employed the wretched tools she had to work with.

He saw a different operation going on in the same house, of which he gives the following account:

“ I found there another woman shaving a child's head, with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a piece of stick. I observed, that she first wet the hair with a rag dipped in water, applying her instrument to that part which she had previously soaked. The operation seemed to give no pain to the child; although the hair was taken off as close as if one of our razors had been employed. Encouraged by what I now saw, I soon after tried one of these singular instruments upon myself, and found it to be an excellent *succedaneum*. However, the men of these islands have recourse to another contrivance when they shave their beards. The operation is performed with two shells; one of which they place under a small part of the beard, and with the other, applied above, they scrape that part off. In this manner they are able to shave very close. The process is, indeed, rather tedious, but not painful; and there

“ there are men amongst them who seem to profess
 “ this trade. It was as common, while we were
 “ here, to see our sailors go ashore to have their
 “ beards scraped off, after the fashion of Hapae,
 “ as it was to see their Chiefs come on board to be
 “ shaved by our barbers.”

Finding that little or nothing of the produce of the island was now brought to the ships, they resolved to change their station, and to wait Feenou's return from Vavoo, in some other convenient anchoring-place, where refreshments might still be met with. At half past two in the afternoon of the 26th of May, they hauled into a bay that lies between the South end of Lefooga, and the North end of Hoolaiva, and there anchored.

About noon, a large sailing canoe came under their stern, in which was a person named Futtasaihe, or Poulaho, or both; who, as the natives then on board said, was King of Tongataboo, and of all the neighbouring islands. It was a matter of surprize to them to have a stranger introduced under this character, which they had so much reason to believe really belonged to Feenou. However, it being their interest, as well as inclination, to pay court to all the great men, without making inquiry into the validity of their assumed titles, he was invited on board; he brought with him, as a present, two fat hogs, though not so fat as himself. If weight of body could give weight in rank or power, he was certainly the most eminent man in that respect they had seen; for, though not very tall, he was very unwieldy, and almost shapeless with corpulence. He was a sedate, sensible man. He viewed the ship, and the several new objects, with uncommon attention; and asked many pertinent questions; one of which was: What could induce them to visit these islands? After he had satisfied his curiosity in looking at the cattle, and other novelties which he met with upon deck, he was requested to walk down into the cabin. To this his attendants objected, saying, that if he were to accept of that invitation, it must happen, that people would walk over his head; but the Chief himself, less scrupulous in this respect than his attendants, waved all ceremony, and walked down.

Poulaho

Poulaho sat down with them to dinner; but he eat little, and drank less. When he rose from the table, he desired the Captain to accompany him ashore. Omai was asked to be of the party; but he was too faithfully attached to Feenou, to shew any attention to his competitor; and, therefore, excused himself. The Captain attended the Chief in his own boat, having first made presents to him of such articles as, he could observe, he had an inclination for. The moment the boat reached the beach, he ordered two more hogs to be brought, and delivered to them. He was then carried out of the boat, by some of his own people, upon a board resembling a hand-barrow, and went and seated himself in a small house near the shore; which seemed to have been erected there for his accommodation. He placed the Captain at his side; and his attendants, who were not numerous, seated themselves in a semicircle before them, on the outside of the house. Behind the Chief, or rather on one side, sat an old woman, with a sort of fan in her hand, whose office it was to prevent his being pestered with the flies.

The several articles his people had got, by trading on board the ships, were now displayed before him. He looked over them all, with attention, inquired what they had given in exchange, and seemed pleased with the bargains they had made. At length he ordered every thing to be restored to the respective owners, except a glass bowl, with which he was so much pleased, that he reserved it for himself. The persons who brought these things to him, first squatted themselves down before him, then they deposited their several purchases, and immediately rose up and retired. The same respectful ceremony was observed in taking them away; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. The Captain stayed till several of his attendants left him, first paying him obedience, by bowing the head down to the sole of his foot, and touching or tapping the same, with the upper and under side of the fingers of both hands. Others, who were not in the circle, came, as it seemed, on purpose, and paid him this mark of respect, and then retired, without speaking a word. The decorum that was observed

erved, was beyond any thing they had seen elsewhere, even in civilized nations.

Next morning Poulaho, the King, came on board betimes; and brought, as a present, one of their caps, made, or at least covered, with red feathers. These caps were much sought after, as it was known they would be highly valued at Otaheite; and though very large prizes were offered, not one was brought for sale; which shewed, that they were no less valuable in the estimation of the people here; nor was there a person in either ship, that could make himself the proprietor of one, except Captain Cook, Captain Clerke, and Omai. These caps, or rather bonnets, are composed of the tail feathers of the Tropic bird, with the red feathers of the parroquets wrought upon them, or jointly with them. They are made so as to tie upon the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semicircle, whose radius is eighteen or twenty inches.

At daybreak the next morning, they weighed with a fine breeze, and stood to the Westward, with a view to return to Annamooka. They were followed by several sailing canoes; in one of which was the King. He quitted them in a short time, but left his brother and five of his attendants on board. They had also the company of a Chief, just then arrived from Tongataboo, whose name was Tooboueitoa. The moment he arrived, he sent his canoe away, and declared that he and five more, who came with him, would sleep on board; so that the cabin was filled with visitors. They brought plenty of provisions with them, for which they always had suitable returns.

On the 31st, they stood for the channel, between Kootoo and the reef of rocks that lie to the West. The wind was fresh, and blew by squalls, with rain, and they were not without apprehensions of danger. Capt. Cook kept the deck till midnight, when he left it to the Master, with such directions as he thought would keep the ships clear of the shoals. The Resolution, by a small shift of the wind, fetched farther to the windward than was expected. By this means she was very near running full upon a low sandy isle, called Pootoo Pootooa. It happened, very fortunately, that the people had just before

fore been ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, so that the necessary movements were executed with judgment and alertness; and this alone saved them from destruction. The Discovery being astern, was out of danger. Such hazardous situations are the unavoidable companions of the man, who goes upon a voyage of discovery.

This circumstance frightened the passengers so much, that they expressed a strong desire to get ashore. Accordingly, as soon as day-light returned, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer, who had the command of it, was directed, after landing them at Kotoo, to found along the reef that spits off from that island, for anchorage.

They lay here until the 4th, when they weighed; and, with a fresh gale at East South East, stood away for Annamooka, where they anchored; next morning, nearly in the same station which they had so lately occupied.

The Captain went on shore, and examined the several places where he had sown melon seeds, and had the mortification to find, that most of them were destroyed by a small ant; but some pine-apple plants, which he had also left, were in a thriving state.

About noon, next day, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo. He told them, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, which had sailed with him from that island, had been lost, owing to the late blowing weather; and that every body on board them had perished. This melancholy tale did not seem to affect any of his countrymen who heard it; and Captain Cook was by this time too well acquainted with his character, to give much credit to such a story. The following morning Poulaho, and the other Chiefs who had been wind-bound with him, arrived. Feenou now seemed to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in assuming a character that did not belong to him. For he not only acknowledged Poulaho to be King of Tongataboo, and the other isles; but affected to insult much on it, which, no doubt, was with a view to make amends for his former presumption. Both he and Poulaho went on board to dinner; but only the latter sat at table. Feenou having made his obeisance in the usual way, saluting his Sovereign's foot with his head
and

and hands, retired out of the cabin. The King had before told Captain Cook that this would happen; and it now appeared, that Feenou could not even eat nor drink in his royal presence.

At eight o'clock next morning they steered for Tongataboo, having a gentle breeze at North East. About fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels, belonging to the natives, set out with them; but every one of them outran the ships considerably.

They continued their course till day-break, and were, insensibly, drawn upon a large flat, upon which lay innumerable coral rocks, below the surface of the water. Notwithstanding all their care to keep the ship clear of them, they could not prevent her from striking on one of these rocks. Nor did the Discovery, though behind, escape any better. Fortunately, neither of the ships stuck fast, nor received any damage. They could not get back without increasing the danger, as they had come in almost before the wind. The moment they found a spot where they could drop the anchor, clear of rocks, they came to; and sent the Masters, with the boats, to sound.

About four o'clock, the boats made the signal for having found good anchorage. Upon this they weighed, and stood in till dark, and then anchored in nine fathoms, having a fine, clear, sandy bottom.

The King now sailed round the ships in his canoe; there were also a great many small canoes. Two of these, which could not get out of the way of his royal vessel, he run quite over, with as little concern as if they had been bits of wood. Amongst many others who came on board the Resolution, was Otago, who had been so useful when they visited Tongataboo during their last voyage; and one Toobou, who, at that time, had attached himself to Captain Furneaux. They brought two hogs, and some yams, as a testimony of their friendship, for which they were amply rewarded.

At length about two in the afternoon, they arrived at their intended station. It was a very snug place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the South East, and two small islands on the East and North East. Here they anchored in ten fathoms water, over a bottom of oozy sand, distant from the shore one-third of a mile.

Soon

Soon after they had anchored, they went ashore, accompanied by Omai and a few of the officers. They found the King waiting for them upon the beach. He immediately conducted them to a small neat house, situated a little within the skirts of the woods, with a fine large area before it. This house, he told them, was at their service during their stay at the island; and a better situation they could not wish for.

They had not been long in the house, before a pretty large circle of the natives were assembled, and seated upon the area. A root of the *kava* plant being brought, and laid down before the King, he ordered it to be split into pieces, and distributed to several people of both sexes, who began the operation of chewing it; and a bowl of their favourite liquor was soon prepared. In the mean time, a baked hog, and two baskets of baked yams were produced, and afterwards divided into ten portions. These portions were then given to certain people present; but how many were to share in each they could not tell. One of them was bestowed on the King's brother; and one remained undisposed of, which, it was judged, was for the King himself, as it was a choice bit. The liquor was next served out, but not a fourth part of the company had tasted either the victuals or the drink.

As they intended to make some stay at Tongataboo, they pitched a tent, in the forenoon, just by the house which Poulaho had assigned for their use. The horses, cattle, and sheep, were afterwards landed, and a party of marines, with their officer, stationed there as a guard. The observatory was then set up, at a small distance from the other tent; and Mr. King resided on shore, to attend the observations. The gunners were ordered to conduct the traffic with the natives, who thronged from every part of the island, with hogs, yams, coconuts, and other articles of their produce. In a short time, their land post was like a fair, and the ships were so crowded with visitors, the sailors had hardly room to stir upon the decks.

It was now mentioned, that there were other great men of the island, whom they had not as yet seen; in particular, a person named Mareewagee, who was of the first consequence in the place. Some of the natives

even hinted, that he was too great a man to confer the honour of a visit upon them. This account exciting curiosity, Captain Cook mentioned to Poulaho, that he was very desirous of waiting upon Mareewagee; and he readily agreed to accompany him to the place of his residence, the next morning.

Accordingly they set out, pretty early, in the pinnace, and entered a spacious bay or inlet, up which they rowed about a league, and landed amidst a considerable number of people, who received them with a sort of acclamation, not unlike huzzaing. They immediately separated, to let Poulaho pass, who took them into a small inclosure, and shifted the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, neatly folded; that was carried by a young man. An old woman assisted in dressing him, and put a mat over his cloth; as we supposed, to prevent its being dirtied when he sat down. On asking him where Mareewagee was, to their great surprize, he said he had gone from the place. It afterward appeared, that, in this affair, they had laboured under some gross mistakes, and that their interpreter, Omai, had either been misinformed, or had misunderstood what was told him about the great man, on whose account they had made this excursion.

The place they went to was a village, most delightfully situated on the bank of the inlet, where all, or most of the principal persons of the island reside; each having his house in the midst of a small plantation, with lesser houses, and offices for servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round; and for the most part, have only one entrance. This is by a door, fastened on the inside by a prop of wood; so that a person has to knock before he can get admittance. Every article of the vegetable produce of the island, abounded in these plantations; but these, it was observed, are not the residence of people of the first rank. There are some large houses near the public roads with spacious smooth grass-plots before them, and uninclosed. These belonged to the King; and, probably, they are the places where their public assemblies are held.

About noon the next day, this Mareewagee, of whom they had heard so much, actually came to the neighbourhood of their post on shore; and with him, a very considerable

siderable number of people of all ranks. They were informed, that he had taken this trouble on purpose to give them an opportunity of waiting upon him; having, probably, heard of the displeasure Captain Cook had shewn on his disappointment the day before. In the afternoon, a party, accompanied by Feenou, landed to pay him a visit. They found a person sitting under a large tree, near the shore, a little to the right of the tent. A piece of cloth, at least forty yards long, was spread before him, round which a great number of people of both sexes were seated. It was natural to suppose, that this was the great man; but they were undeceived by Feenou; who informed them, that another, who sat on a piece of mat, a little way from this Chief, to the right hand, was Mareewagee, and he introduced them to him, who received them very kindly, and desired them to sit down by him. The person who sat under the tree, fronting them, was called Toobou. Captain Cook, to distinguish him from another of the same name, mentioned by Captain Furneaux, calls him afterwards *old Toobou*. Both he and Mareewagee had a venerable appearance. The latter is a slender man, and seems to be considerably above three-score years of age. The former is rather corpulent, and almost blind with a disorder of his eyes; though not so old.

They were entertained, for about an hour, with the performance of two French horns and a drum; but they seemed most pleased with the firing off a pistol, which Captain Clerke had in his pocket. Before the Captain and his people took their leave, the large piece of cloth was presented to him.

In the morning of the 15th, Captain Cook received a message from old Toobou, that he wanted to see him ashore. They found him like an ancient patriarch, seated under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of the cloth, made in the island, spread out at full length before him; and a number of respectably looking people sitting round it. He desired them to sit by him; and then he told Omai, that the cloth, together with a piece of red feathers, and about a dozen cocoa-nuts, were his present to the Captain; who invited him on board, as he had nothing on shore to give him in return.

Futtasaihe, Poulaho's son, made also a present of a piece of cloth seventy-six yards long, and seven and a half wide, with cocoa-nuts; he was likewise invited on board, where they all dined. When dinner came upon table, not one of them would sit down, or eat a bit of any thing that was served up. On expressing surprize at this, they were all *taboo*, as they said, which word has a very comprehensive meaning; but in general, signifies that a thing is forbidden. Why they were laid under such restraints, at present, was not explained. Dinner being over, and having gratified their curiosity, by shewing to them every part of the ship, they conducted them ashore.

On the 16th, in the morning, Mr. Gore and Captain Cook took a walk into the country; in the course of which nothing remarkable appeared, but their having opportunities of seeing the whole process of making cloth, which is the principal manufacture of these islands. As the process differs from the manner of making it at Otaheite, mentioned in a former voyage, it may not be unentertaining to give the following account of it:

The manufacturers, who are females, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper-mulberry, which they cultivate for that purpose; and which seldom grows more than six or seven feet in height, and about four fingers in thickness. From these they strip the bark, and scrape off the outer-rind with a muscle-shell. The bark is then rolled up to take off the convexity which it had round the stalk, and macerated in water for some time (they say, a night). After this, it is laid across the trunk of a small tree squared, and beaten with a square wooden instrument, about a foot long, full of coarse grooves on all sides; but sometimes with one that is plain. According to the size of the bark, a piece is soon produced; but the operation is often repeated by another hand, or it is folded several times, and beat longer, which seems rather intended to close than to divide its texture. When this is sufficiently effected, it is spread out to dry; the pieces being from four to six, or more, feet in length, and half as broad. They are then given to another person, who joins the pieces, by smearing part of them over with the viscous juice of a berry, called *tooo*, which serves as a glue.

glue. Having been thus lengthened, they are laid over a large piece of wood, with a kind of stamp, made of a fibrous substance pretty closely interwoven, placed beneath. They then take a bit of cloth, and dip it in a juice, expressed from the bark of a tree, called *kokka*, which they rub briskly upon the piece that is making. This, at once, leaves a dull brown colour, and a dry gloss upon its surface; the stamp, at the same time, making a slight impression, that answers no other purpose, but to make the pieces, that are glued together, stick a little more firmly. In this manner they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till they produce a piece of cloth, of such length and breadth as they want; generally leaving a border, of a foot broad, at the sides, and longer at the ends, unstained. Throughout the whole, if any parts of the original pieces are too thin, or have holes, which is often the case, they glue spare bits upon them, till they become of an equal thickness. When they want to produce a black colour, they mix the foot procured from an oily nut, called *doedooe*, with the juice of the *kokka*, in different quantities, according to the proposed depth of the tinge. They say, that the black sort of cloth, which is commonly most glazed, makes a cold dress, but the other a warm one; and, to obtain strength in both, they are always careful to join the small pieces lengthwise, which makes it impossible to tear the cloth in any direction but one.

On their return from the country, they met with Feenou, and took him, and another young Chief, on board to dinner. When their fare was set upon the table, neither of them would eat a bit; saying, that they were *taboo avy*. From this they conjectured, that, on some account or other, they were, at this time, forbidden to use water; or, which is more probable, they did not like the water made use of, it being taken up out of one of their bathing-places.

These people had also a very great propensity to thieving. They ventured, at noon day, to attempt to steal an anchor from the Discovery, and nearly succeeded, if the flook had not hooked one of the chain plates in lowering down the ship's side, from which they could not disengage it by hand; and tackles were things they were

unacquainted with. The only act of violence they were guilty of, was the breaking the shoulder bone of one of their goats, so that she died soon after. This loss fell upon themselves, as she was one of those that it was intended to leave upon the island.

Early in the morning of the 18th, an accident happened that strongly marked one of their customs. A man got out of a canoe into the quarter gallery of the Resolution, and stole from thence a pewter basin. He was discovered, pursued, and brought along side the ship. On this occasion, three old women, who were in the canoe, made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their breasts and faces in a most violent manner, with the inside of their fists; and all this was done without shedding a tear.

This day they bestowed on Mareewagee some presents, in return for those they had received from him the day before; and as the entertainments which he had exhibited for their amusement, called upon them to make some exhibition in their way, a party of marines were ordered to go through their exercise; and, in the evening, they played off some fireworks at the same place. Poulaho, with all the principal Chiefs, and a great number of people, of all denominations, were present. The platoon firing, which was executed tolerably well, seemed to give them pleasure; but they were lost in astonishment when they beheld the water rockets.

In expectation of this evening shew, the circle of natives about their tent being pretty large, they engaged the greatest part of the afternoon in boxing and wrestling. When any of them chooses to wrestle, he gets up from one side of the ring, and crosses the ground in a sort of measured pace, clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and produces a hollow sound; that is reckoned the challenge. If an opponent appears, they come together with marks of the greatest good-nature, generally smiling, and taking time to adjust the piece of cloth which is fastened round the waist. They then lay hold of each other by this girdle, with a hand on each side; and he who succeeds in drawing his antagonist to him, immediately tries to lift him upon his breast, and throw him upon his back; and if he be able

to turn round with him two or three times in that position, before he throws him, his dexterity never fails of procuring plaudits from the spectators. If they be more equally matched, they close soon, and endeavour to throw each other by entwining their legs, or lifting each other from the ground; in which struggles they shew a prodigious exertion of strength, every muscle, as it were being ready to burst with straining. When one is thrown, he immediately quits the field, but the victor sits down for a few seconds, then gets up, and goes to the side he came from, who proclaims the victory aloud, in a sentence delivered slowly, and in a musical cadence. When they find, that they are so equally matched as not to be likely to throw each other, they leave off by mutual consent.

One of the most dextrous blows of their boxers, is to turn round on their heel, just as they have struck their antagonist, and to give him another very smart one with the other hand backward. Some of the sailors ventured to contend with them in wrestling and boxing, but without success, being always worsted. The boxing matches seldom last long; and the parties either leave off together, or one acknowledges his being beat.

Before they quitted the island, Captain Cook disposed of several of the animals; to Poulaho, the King, he gave a young English bull and cow; to Mareewagee, a Cape ram, and two ewes; and to Feenou, a horse and a mare. As his design, to make such a distribution, had been made known the day before, most of the people in the neighbourhood were then present. He instructed Omai to tell them, that there was no such animals within many months sail of their country; that they were brought, for their use, from that immense distance, at a vast trouble and expence; that, therefore, they must be careful not to kill any of them till they had multiplied to a numerous race; and, lastly, that they and their children ought to remember, that they had received them from the men of *Britane*. He also explained to them their several uses, and what else was necessary for them to know, or rather as far as he knew; for Omai was not very well versed in such things himself.

It

It soon appeared that some were dissatisfied with this allotment; for, early next morning, one of the kids and two turkey-cocks were missing. The Captain, being determined to have them back again, seized on three canoes that happened to be along-side the ships. He then went ashore, and having found the King, his brother, Feenou, and some other Chiefs, he immediately put a guard over them, and gave them to understand, that they must remain under restraint, till not only the kid and the turkeys, but the other things, that had been stolen, at different times, were restored. They concealed, as well as they could, their feelings, on finding themselves prisoners; and, having assured him that every thing should be restored, as he desired, sat down to drink their *kava*, seemingly much at their ease. It was not long before an axe and an iron wedge, were brought. In the mean time, some armed natives began to gather behind the house; but, on a part of the guard marching against them, they dispersed. On asking them to go aboard to dinner, they readily consented. But some having afterward objected to the King's going, he instantly rose up, and declared he would be the first man. Accordingly they all came on board. They were kept there till near four o'clock, when they were conducted ashore; and, soon after, the kid, and one of the turkey-cocks, were brought back. The other, they said, should be restored the next morning. As the Captain believed this would happen, he released them and the canoes.

In walking out with Omai in the evening, after the Chiefs were gone on shore, they met with about half a dozen women, in one place, at supper. Two of the company were fed by the others; on asking the reason, they said *taboo mattee*. On farther enquiry it was found, that one of them had, two months before, washed the dead corpse of a Chief; and that, on this account, she was not to handle any food for five months. The other had performed the same office to the corpse of another person of inferior rank, and was now under the same restriction; but not for so long a time.

Next day, by the King's invitation, Captain Cook dined on shore. The King sat down with him; but he neither eat nor drank. He found that this was owing to
the

the p
stood,
great
who p

Som
made
witho
two d
with t
of the
the de
exped
very j
wante
ed wit
along
for the
covere
sition

It w
an ecl
that ti
fore an
try, so
they m
which
lar net
which
had all
a doze
metho
A sho
which
set-net
of each
hands
or cau

At a
tended
not gr
them.
down t

the presence of a female, whom, as they afterward understood, had superior rank to himself. As soon as this great personage had dined, she stepped up to the King, who put his hands to her feet; and then she retired.

Some of the officers, belonging to both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, without leave, returned this evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken with them their muskets, with the necessary ammunition, and several small articles of the favorite commodities; all which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them, in the course of their expedition. Feenou and Poulaho, upon this occasion, very justly observed, that if any of them, at any time, wanted to go into the country, they ought to be acquainted with it; in which case they would send proper persons along with them; and then they would be answerable for their safety. Most of the things were, however, recovered, and the turkey-cock also, through the interposition of Feenou.

It was now the 25th of June, and as there was to be an eclipse of the sun, Captain Cook deferred sailing till that time had elapsed, in order to observe it; he therefore amused himself by going with Poulaho up the country, sometimes by water. As they rowed up an inlet, they met fourteen canoes fishing in company; in one of which was Poulaho's son. In each canoe was a triangular net, extended between two poles; at the lower end of which was a cod to receive and secure the fish. They had already caught some fine mullets; and they put about a dozen into their boat. The Captain desired to see their method of fishing; which they readily complied with. A shoal of fish was supposed to be upon one of the banks, which they instantly inclosed in a long net like a seine, or set-net. This the fishers, one getting into the water out of each boat, surrounded with the triangular nets in their hands; with which they scooped the fish out of the seine, or caught them as they attempted to leap over it.

At another time they made an excursion by land, attended by one of the King's ministers. Their train was not great, as he would not suffer the rabble to follow them. He also obliged all those whom they met, to sit down till they had passed; which is a mark of respect
due

due only to their Sovereigns. By far the greatest part of the country was cultivated, and planted with various sorts of productions. They met with several large uninhabited houses, which, they were told, belonged to the King. There were many public and well-beaten roads, and abundance of foot-paths leading to every part of the island. It is remarkable, that when they were on the most elevated parts, at least a hundred feet above the level of the sea, they often met with the same coral rock which is found at the shore. And yet these very spots, with hardly any soil upon them, were covered with luxuriant vegetation.

When they returned from their walk, supper was ready. It consisted of a baked hog, some fish, and yams, all excellently well cooked, after the method of these islands. As there was nothing to amuse after supper, they followed the custom of the country, and lay down to sleep, their beds being mats spread upon the floor, and cloth to cover them. The King, who had made himself very happy with some wine and brandy which they had given him, slept in the same house, as well as several others of the natives. Long before day-break, he and they all rose, and sat conversing by moon-light. The conversation, as might well be guessed, turned wholly upon their visitors; the King entertaining his company with an account of what he had seen, or remarked. As soon as it was day, they dispersed, some one way, and some another; but it was not long before they all returned, and with them, several more of their countrymen.

They now began to prepare a bowl of *kava*. The *kava* is a species of pepper, which they cultivate for this purpose, and esteem it a valuable article. The root is the only part used. They break it in pieces, scrape the dirt off with a shell, and then each begins and chews his portion, which he spits into a plantain leaf. The person who is to prepare the liquor, collects all these mouthfuls, and puts them into a large wooden dish or bowl, adding as much water as will make it of a proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands; and some loose stuff, of which mats are made, is thrown upon the surface. The immediate effect of this beverage is not perceptible on these people, who use it so frequently; but on some

of

of the
prepar
icating
faction
other
it seve
least,
swallo
terwar

Wh
every
theft
the C
which
stolen

Nex
some
were f
be wo
dismiss
with a
trouble
sioned
only b
felt it.

Mr.
Futtas
was k
head.
with t
the en
the fa
pared
at the
which
some c
tree,
leaves
the sa
on for
ture,
After

of the officers, who ventured to try it, though so nastily prepared, it had the same power as spirits have, in intoxicating them; or rather, it produced that kind of stupefaction, which is the consequence of using opium, or other substances of that kind. They were seen to drink it seven times before noon, yet it is so disagreeable, or at least, seems so, that the greatest part of them cannot swallow it without making wry faces, and shuddering afterward.

When they got on board the ship, they found that every thing had been quiet during their absence, not a theft having been committed. This shews what power the Chiefs have, when they have the will to execute it; which they were seldom to expect, since, whatever was stolen was generally, if not always, conveyed to them.

Next day, however, six or eight of them assaulted some of the people, who were sawing planks. They were fired upon by the sentry; and one was supposed to be wounded, and three others taken. These were not dismissed without punishment. After this, they behaved with a little more circumspection, and gave much less trouble. This change of behaviour was certainly occasioned by the man being wounded; for, before, they had only been told the effect of fire-arms, but now they had felt it.

Mr. Anderson and Mr. King, on the 30th, went with Futtafaihe to his house. When they arrived, a large hog was killed; which is done by repeated strokes on the head. The hair was then scraped off, very dexterously, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo; taking the entrails out at a large oval hole cut in the belly, by the same simple instrument. Before this, they had prepared an oven; which is a hole dug in the earth, filled at the bottom with stones, about the size of the fist, over which a fire is made till they are red hot. They took some of these stones, wrapt up in leaves of the bread-fruit tree, and filled the hog's belly, stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and putting a plug of the same kind in the anus. The carcase was then placed on some sticks laid across the stones, in a standing posture, and covered with a great quantity of plantain leaves. After which, they dug up the earth all round; and hav-

ing

ing thus effectually closed the oven, the operation of baking required no farther interference. Of this hog they made a hearty dinner.

In their walks they saw several *ternate* bats, clinging to Etooa trees. They could not kill any for want of musquets; but some that were got at Annamooka, measured near three feet when the wings were extended.

It is necessary to mention, that when they sat down both to dinner and supper, that instead of Futtafaihe entertaining them, they were to entertain him; the property of the feast being entirely transferred to them, as his guests, and they were to dispose of it as they pleased. The same person who cleaned the hog in the morning, now cut it up, in a very dextrous manner, with a knife of split bambo; dividing the several parts, and hitting the joints, with a quickness and skill that surprized them. The whole was set before them, though at least fifty pounds weight, untill they took a small piece away, and desired, that they would share the rest amongst the people sitting round.

After supper, abundance of cloth was brought for them to sleep in; but they were a good deal disturbed, by a singular instance of luxury, in which their principal men indulge themselves; that of being beat while they are asleep. Two women sat by Futtafaihe, and performed this operation, which is called *tooge tooge*, by beating briskly on his body and legs, with their fists, as on a drum, till he fell asleep, and continuing it the whole night, with some short intervals. When once the person is asleep, they abate a little in the strength and quickness of beating; but resume it, if they observe any appearance of his awaking. In the morning, they found that Futtafaihe's women relieved each other, and went to sleep by turns. In any other country, it would be supposed, that such a practice would put an end to all rest; but here it certainly acts as an opiate; and is a strong proof of what habit may effect. The noise of this, however, was not the only thing that kept them awake; for the people, who passed the night in the house, not only conversed amongst each other frequently, as in the day; but all got up before it was light, and made a hearty meal on fish and yams, which were brought to them by a person, who

who seemed to know very well the appointed time for this nocturnal refreshment.

Next morning on coming to the point, the natives mentioned, something of one, who, they said, had been fired at by some of their people; and, upon their wishing to see him, they conducted them to a house, where they found a man, who had been shot through the shoulder, but not dangerously; as the ball had entered a little above the inner part of the collar bone, and passed out obliquely backward. He was the person who had been fired at by one of the sentinels, three days before; though positive orders had been given, that none of them should load their pieces with any thing but small shot. They gave some directions to his friends how to manage the wound, and who seemed pleased, when told it would get well in a certain time.

They had prolonged their stay at this island, on account of the approaching eclipse; but on the 2d of July, on looking at the micrometer, they found some of the rack work broken, and the instrument usefess; and there was no time to repair it before it was intended to be used. Preparing now for their departure, they got on board, this day, all the cattle, poultry, and other animals, except such as were destined to remain.

Captain Cook observing that the King, when at dinner the day before their departure, took great notice of the plates, gave him one of pewter; he then explained the several uses to which he intended to apply it. Two of them are very extraordinary. He said, that, whenever he should have occasion to visit any of the other islands, he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as a sort of representative in his absence, that the people might pay it the same obeisance they do to himself in person. He was asked, what had been usually employed for this purpose, before he got this plate; and they had the satisfaction of learning from him, that this singular honour had hitherto been conferred on a wooden bowl in which he washed his hands. The other extraordinary use to which he meant to apply it in the room of his wooden bowl, was to discover a thief. He said, that when any thing was stolen, and the thief could not be found out, the people were all assembled together before him, when he

G and H

washed

washed his hands in water in this vessel; after which it was cleaned, and then the whole multitude advanced, one after another, and touched it in the same manner that they touch his foot, when they pay him obeisance. If the guilty person touched it, he died immediately upon the spot; not by violence, but by the hand of Providence; and if any one refused to touch it, his refusal was a clear proof that he was the man.

In the morning of the 5th, the day of the eclipse, the weather was dark and cloudy, with showers of rain; so that we had little hopes of an observation. About nine o'clock the sun broke out at intervals for about half an hour; after which it was totally obscured, till within a minute or two of the beginning of the eclipse. Captain Cook lost the observation, by not having a dark glass at hand, suitable to the clouds that were continually passing over the sun; and Mr. Bligh had not got the sun into the field of his telescope.

As soon as they knew the eclipse to be over, they packed up the instruments, and sent every thing on board that had not been already removed. As none of the natives had taken the least notice or care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, Captain Cook ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive, that, if he had left them here, they run great risk of being destroyed by dogs. That animal did not exist in that island, when he first visited it in 1773; but he now found they had got a good many, partly by the breed then left by him, and partly from some, imported since that time, from an island not very remote, called Feejee.

The *boogo*, which is a species of fig, with narrow pointed leaves, is the largest sized tree of the island; the basis of which, as far as they knew, is entirely a coral rock.

Besides vast numbers of cocoa-nut trees, they have three other sorts of palms. There is plenty of excellent sugarcane, which is cultivated; gourds; bamboo; turmeric; and a species of fig, about the size of a small cherry, called *matte*, which, though wild, is sometimes eat.

The only quadrupeds besides hogs, are a few rats and some dogs. Fowls, which are of a large breed, are domesticated here.

Amongst

Amo
the co
sparrov
the cro

The
or infed
and wh
scorpio

The
than m
mullet
wives;
also sha

On J
prevent
mornin

Chiefs;
or had a
small re
About

yams, v
aut mill
portion,

On
away fo
habitan
mornin

They
and seve
to rejoic

tain Coc
little tim
water;

that bro
but such
Here

Cape of
the care
Eooa no
to be a p
of sheep

Amongst the birds are parrots, somewhat smaller than the common grey ones; parroquets, not larger than a sparrow, of a fine yellowish green, with bright azure on the crown of the head, and the throat and belly red.

The only noxious or disgusting animals of the reptile or insect tribe, are sea snakes, three feet long, with black and white circles alternately, often found on shore; some scorpions, and *centipedes*.

The sea abounds with fish, though the variety is less than might be expected. The most frequent sorts are mullets; several sorts of parrot-fish; silver fish; oldwives; and some beautifully spotted soles; here are also sharks, and some curious devil-fish.

On July 6th they were ready to sail; but the wind prevented them for three days. On the 8th, in the morning, Captain Cook walked out, and visited several Chiefs; all of them were taking their morning draught, or had already taken it. The king was found asleep in a small retired hut, with two women tapping on his breech. About eleven o'clock he arose, and then some fish and yams, which tasted as if they had been stewed in cocoa-nut milk, were brought to him. Of these he eat a large portion, and lay down once more to sleep.

On the 10th, they weighed anchor, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as it is called by the inhabitants) where they anchored at eight o'clock the next morning.

They had no sooner anchored than Taofa, the Chief, and several other natives, came on board, and seemed to rejoice much at their arrival. This Taofa knew Captain Cook when he was here upon the last voyage. In a little time he went on shore with him, in search of fresh water; the procuring of which, was the chief object that brought them to Eooa. There was however none but such as was bad, or inconveniently situated.

Here they put on shore the ram and two ewes of the Cape of Good Hope breed of sheep; intrusting them to the care of Taofa, who seemed proud of his charge. Eooa not having, as yet, got any dogs upon it, seems to be a proper place than Tongataboo for the rearing of sheep.

The 13th, in the afternoon, a party made an excursion to the highest part of the island. They were now about two or three hundred feet above the level of the sea, and yet, even here, the coral was perforated into all the holes and inequalities, which usually diversify the surface of this substance within the reach of the tide.

From the elevation to which they had ascended, they had a full view of the whole island. The plains and meadows, of which there are here some of great extent, are adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, and form a very beautiful landscape. While the Captain was surveying this delightful prospect, he flattered himself with the pleasing idea, that some future navigators may, from the same station, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought to these islands by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, would sufficiently mark to posterity, that these voyages had not been useless to the general interests of humanity.

Omai, who was a great favourite, was tempted with the offer of being made Chief of this island, if he would have staid amongst them; and it is not clear, that he would not have been glad to stay, if the scheme had met with the Captain's approbation.

On returning from this country expedition, they were informed that a party of the natives had been seen to strike one of their own countrymen with a club, which laid bare, or, as others said, fractured his skull, and then broke his thigh with the same. On asking the reason of so severe a treatment, they were informed, that he had been discovered in a situation rather indelicate, with a woman who was *taboo'd*. They, however, understood, that she was no otherwise *taboo'd*, than by belonging to another person, and rather superior in rank to her gallant. The female sinner has, by far, the smaller share of punishment for her misdemeanor; as they said, she would only receive a slight punishment.

The next morning was planted a pine-apple, and the seeds of melons, and other vegetables, in the Chief's plantation. They had some encouragement, indeed, to flatter themselves, that their endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for, this day, there was served up at

at di
seeds

No

a pre

some

contri

walki

of the

thing

diately

on 'Ta

offend

concer

necessa

one of

pair of

The

provid

what h

were no

man's

board.

three of

himself

Soon

they for

rocks.

Thus

stay of

together

differen

their gr

courage

time ex

They ex

ing, in

they sta

by leav

pleasure

They

traffic, a

and hat

at dinner, a dish of turnips, being the produce of the seeds left here during their last voyage.

Next day, July 16, the Captain received of the Chief a present, consisting of two small heaps of yams, and some fruit, which seemed to be collected by a kind of contribution, as at the other isles. One of the sailors, walking a little distance, was attacked by twenty or more of the natives, who knocked him down, and then took every thing he had on his back. On hearing of this, they immediately seized two canoes, and a large hog; and insisted on Taofa's causing the clothes to be restored, and on the offenders being delivered up. The Chief seemed much concerned at what had happened, and forthwith took the necessary steps to satisfy them. It was not long before one of the offenders was delivered up, and a shirt and a pair of trowsers restored.

The next morning the Captain landed again, having provided himself with a present for Taofa, in return for what he had given him. The remainder of the clothes were now brought in; but, as they had been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not worth carrying on board. Taofa, on receiving the present, shared it with three or four other Chiefs, keeping only a small part for himself.

Soon after they weighed. On heaving up the anchor, they found that the cable had suffered considerably by the rocks.

Thus they took leave of the Friendly Islands, after a stay of near three months; during which time, they lived together in the most cordial friendship. Some accidental differences, it is true, now and then happened, owing to their great propensity to thieving; but, too often, encouraged by the negligence of their own people. The time employed amongst them was not thrown away. They expended very little of their sea provisions; subsisting, in general, upon the produce of the islands while they staid. The idea of having benefited these people, by leaving useful animals among them, gave no small pleasure to Captain Cook.

They found, by experience, that the best articles for traffic, at these islands, are iron tools in general. Axes and hatchets; nails, from the largest spike down to ten-

G. and H 3

penny

penny ones; rasps, files, and knives, are much sought after. Red cloth; and linen, both white and coloured; looking-glasses, and beads, are also in estimation; but, of the latter, those that are blue, are preferred to all others; and white ones are thought the least valuable. A string of large blue beads would, at any time, purchase a hog.

In return for the favourite commodities here enumerated, all the refreshments may be procured that the islands produce. These are, hogs, fowls, fish, yams, bread-fruit, plantains, cocoa-nuts, sugar-cane, and, in general, every such supply as can be met with at Otaheite, or any of the Society Islands. The yams of the Friendly Islands are excellent; and, when grown to perfection, keep very well at sea. But their pork, bread-fruit, and plantains, are much inferior to the same articles at Otaheite.

According to the information they received, this Archipelago is very extensive. Above one hundred and fifty islands were reckoned by the natives, who made use of bits of leaves to ascertain their number.

Feejee, as they were told, lies three days sail from Tongataboo, in the direction of North West by West. The people of this island are formidable on account of the dexterity with which they use their bows and slings. Here prevails the savage practice of eating their enemies, whom they kill in battle.

Now, says Captain Cook, "let me ask those who maintain, that the want of food first brings men to feed on human flesh: What is it that induceth the Feejee people to this practice in the midst of plenty?"

In their enquiries they found poor Omai very deficient as an interpreter; for unless the object, or thing they wanted to enquire about, was actually before them, it was difficult to gain a tolerable knowledge of it. Under these disadvantages, it is not surprising, that they should not be able to bring away satisfactory accounts of many things.

The natives of the Friendly Islands seldom exceed the common stature; but are very strong and well made, especially as to their limbs. They are generally broad about the shoulders; and though the muscular disposition

of

of the
rather
there a

The
men by
for the
that ap
are so c
but to
expressio
women,
fingers,
in Euro

The
brown.
child at
found ar
that their
menon.

There
formities
complai
indolent
increases
length.

testicles,
But in o
monly h

The g
walk, a
accompl

Their
dant mil
are entir
nations i

The e
to thiev

Great a
were ov

to them

quently

solely f

of the men, which seems a consequence of much action, rather conveys the appearance of strength than of beauty, there are several to be seen who are really handsome.

The women are not so much distinguished from the men by their features as by their general form, which is, for the most part, destitute of that strong fleshy firmness that appears in the latter; though the features of some are so delicate, as not only to be a true index of their sex, but to lay claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression. But the most remarkable distinction in the women, is the uncommon smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with the finest in Europe.

The general colour is a cast deeper than the copper brown. They saw a man and a boy at Hapae, and a child at Annamooka, perfectly white. Such have been found amongst all black nations; but it is apprehended, that their colour is rather a disease than a natural phenomenon.

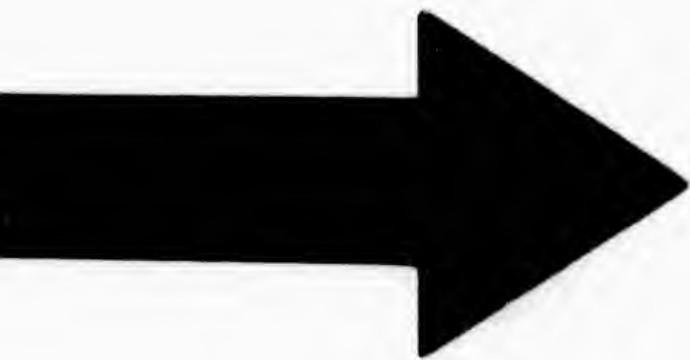
There are, upon the whole, few natural defects or deformities to be found amongst them. There are two complaints frequent with them; one of which is an indolent firm swelling, that affects the legs and arms, and increases them to an extraordinary size in their whole length. The other is a tumour of the same sort in the testicles, which sometimes exceed the size of the two fists. But in other respects, they may be considered as uncommonly healthy.

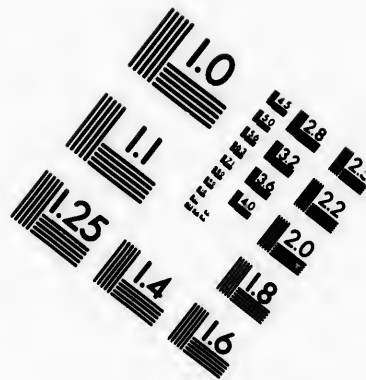
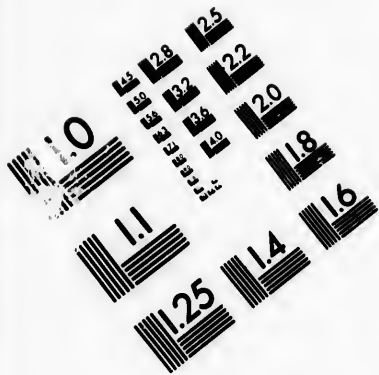
The graceful air and firm step with which these people walk, are not the least obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments.

Their countenances very remarkably express the abundant mildness, or good nature, which they possess; and are entirely free from that savage keenness which marks nations in a barbarous state.

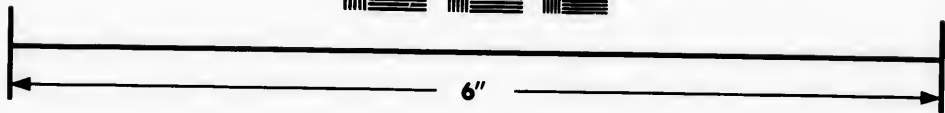
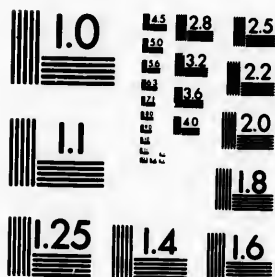
The only defect vitiating their character is a propensity to thieving; to which those of both sexes are addicted. Great allowances, however, should be made; their minds were overpowered with the glare of objects, equally new to them, as they were captivating. The thefts so frequently committed by the natives, may be said to arise solely from an intense curiosity or desire to possess something







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

9 125
122



thing which they had not been accustomed to before, and belonged to a sort of people so different from themselves.

The men are all circumcised, or rather supercised; as the operation consists in cutting off only a small piece of the foreskin, at the upper part; which by that means, is rendered incapable, ever after, of covering the *glans*. This is all they aim at; as they say, the operation is practised from a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both men and women are the same; and consists of a piece of cloth or matting (but mostly the former,) about two yards wide, and two and a half long; at least, so long as to go once and a half round the waist, so which it is confined by a girdle or cord. It is double before, and hangs down like a petticoat, as low as the middle of the leg. The upper part of the garment, above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, so that when unfolded, there is cloth sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders; which is very seldom done.

The ornaments worn by both sexes are necklaces, made of the fruit of the *pandanus*, and various sweet smelling flowers, which go under the general name of *kabulla*. Others are composed of small shells, the wing and leg-bones of birds, shark's teeth, and other things; all which hang loose upon the breast; rings of tortoise-shell on the fingers; and a number of these, joined together, as bracelets on the wrists.

The employment of the women is of the easy kind, and, for the most part, such as may be executed in the house. The manufacturing their cloth is wholly assigned to their care; which has been already described.

The manufacture next in consequence, and also within the department of the women, is that of their mats, which excel every thing that has been seen at any other place, both as to their texture and their beauty. There are many other articles of less note, which employ the females; all finished with great neatness and taste in the disposition of the various parts.

The province allotted to the men is, as might be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the women. Agriculture, architecture, boat-building, fishing,

ing, and other things that relate to navigation, are the objects of their care.

They are amazingly deficient in their taste for building; the houses of the lower people are miserable things and very small, those of the better sort, are larger and more comfortable. The dimensions of one of a middling size, are about thirty feet long, twenty broad, and twelve high. Their house is, properly speaking, a thatched roof or shed, supported by posts and rafters, disposed in a very judicious manner. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with strong, thick matting, and kept very clean. A thick strong mat, about two and one half or three feet broad, bent into the form of a semicircle, and set upon its edge, with the ends touching the side of the house, in shape resembling the fender of a fire hearth, incloses a space for the master and mistress of the family to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon the floor, wherever they please to lie down; the unmarried men and women apart from each other. Or, if the family be large, there are small huts adjoining, to which the servants retire in the night; so that privacy is as much observed here, as one could expect. The clothes that they wear in the day, serve for covering in the night. Their whole furniture consists of a bowl or two, in which they make *kava*; a few gourds; cocoa-nut shells; and some small wooden stools, which serve them for pillows.

The only tools which they make use of to construct their boats, which are very dexterously made, are hatchets, or rather thick adzes, of a smooth black stone that abounds at Toosoa; augres, made of shark's teeth, fixed on small handles; and rasps, of a rough skin of a fish fastened on flat pieces of wood, thinner on one side, which also have handles.

The cordage is made from the fibres of the cocoa-nut hulk, which, though not more than nine or ten inches long, they plait, about the size of a quill, or less, to any length that they please, and roll it up in balls; from which the larger ropes are made, by twisting several of these together. The lines that they fish with, are as strong and even as the best cord we make, resembling it almost

almost in every respect. Their other fishing implements, are large and small hooks made of pearl shell.

The weapons which they make, are clubs of different sorts, (in the ornamenting of which they spend much time) spears and darts. They have also bows and arrows; but these seemed to be designed only for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for military purposes.

Yams, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, compose the greatest part of their vegetable diet. Of their animal food, the chief articles are hogs, fowls, fish, and all sorts of shell fish. The two first vegetable articles, with bread-fruit, are what may be called the basis of their food.

They seem to have no set time for meals. They go to bed as soon as it is dark, and rise with the dawn in the morning.

Their private diversions are chiefly singing, dancing, and music, performed by the women.

The Chiefs have commonly several women; though some were of opinion that there was only one that was looked upon as the mistress of the family; the common people have but one wife.

The unmarried women are generally very chaste; there are some of a different character, but they appeared to be of the lowest class; and such of them as permitted familiarities to the sailors, were prostitutes by profession.

Nothing can be a greater proof of the humanity of these people, than the concern they shew for the dead. They may be said to mourn, not in words but deeds; they beat their teeth with stones, strike a shark's tooth into the head until the blood flows in streams, and thrust spears into the inner part of the thigh, into their sides below the arm-pits, and through the cheeks into the mouth. The common people are interred in no particular spot.

Their long and general mourning proves that they consider death as a very great evil. And this is confirmed by a very odd custom which they practice to avert it. They suppose, that the Deity will accept of the little finger, as a sort of sacrifice efficacious enough to procure the recovery of their health. They cut it off with one of their stone hatchets. There was scarcely one in ten of them whom we did not find thus mutilated, in one or both

both hands; which has a disagreeable effect, especially as they sometimes cut so close, that they encroach upon the bone of the hand which joins to the amputated finger.*

They seem to have little conception of future punishment. They believe, however, that they are justly punished upon earth; and, consequently, use every method to render their divinities propitious. The Supreme Author of most things they call *Kallafootonga*; who, they say, is a female, residing in the sky, and directing the thunder, wind, rain, and, in general, all the changes of weather. They believe, that when she is angry with them, the productions of the earth are blasted; that many things are destroyed by lightning; and that they themselves are afflicted with sickness and death, as well as their hogs and other animals. When this anger abates, they suppose that every thing is restored to its natural order. They also admit a plurality of deities, though all inferior to *Kallafootonga*. Amongst them, they mention *Toosoboolootoo*, god of the clouds and fog; *Talliteboo*, and some others, residing in the Heavens. The first in rank and power, who has the government of the sea, and its productions, is called *Futtasaihe*, who, they say, is a male, and has for his wife *Fykgva Kajeca*. But their notions of the power and other attributes of these beings, are so very absurd, that they suppose they have no farther concern with them after death.

Of the nature of their government, they know but little. Some of them said the power of the King is unlimited, and that the life and property of the subject is at his disposal; and Captain Cook saw many instances to prove, that the lower order of people have no property, nor safety for their persons, but were at the will of the Chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

When any one wants to speak with the King, or Chief, he advances and sits down before him with his legs across; which is a posture to which they are so much accustomed, that any other mode of sitting is disagreeable to them. †

To

* It may be proper to mention here, on the authority of Captain King, that it is common for the inferior people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the Chiefs to whom they belong.

† This is peculiar to the men; the women always sitting with both legs thrown a little on one side. We owe this remark to Captain King.

To speak to the King standing, would be accounted here as a striking mark of rudeness. When he walks out, all he meets must sit down till he has passed. No one is allowed to be over his head; on the contrary, all must come under his feet; for there cannot be a greater outward mark of submission, than that which is paid to the sovereign, and other great people of these islands, by their inferiors. The method is this; the person who is to pay obedience, squats down before the Chief, and bows the head to the sole of his foot; and, having tapped it with the under and upper side of the fingers of both hands, he rises up, and retires. The hands, after this application of them to the Chief's feet, are, in some cases, rendered useless for a time; for, until they are washed, they must not touch any kind of food. When the hands are in this state, they call it *taboo rema*. *Taboo*, in general, signifies forbidden; and *rema* is their word for hand.

Taboo, as we have before observed, is a word of an extensive signification. Human sacrifices are called *tangata taboo*; and when any thing is forbidden to be eat, or made use of, they say, that it is *taboo*.

P A R T III.

*Transactions at Otabeite, and the Society Islands; and
Prosecution of the Voyage to the Coast of North
America, from July 1777 to March 1778.*

CAPTAIN Cook had now left the Friendly Islands, and on the 17th of July he stood to the South, when a squall of wind tore both his main and top-gallant sails. On the 31st Captain Clerke's main-mast was discovered to be sprung in a very dangerous manner; he had also lost his top-gallant yard, and he had not any means of supplying their place.

The Resolution's sprit-sail top-sail was sent him by Lieutenant King, and he got up a jury top-mast, which enabled him to proceed with the Resolution.

In the morning of the 8th of August, land was seen, bearing North North East, nine or ten leagues distant: it was every where guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending, in some places, a full mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. They also observed people on several parts of the coast, walking or running along shore; and, in a little time after they had reached the lee-side of the island, they saw them launch two canoes, into which above a dozen men got and paddled toward us.

They now shortened sail, as well to give these canoes time to come up with them, as to sound for anchorage. The canoes having advanced to about the distance of a pistol-shot from the ship, they stopped. Omai was employed, as he usually had been on such occasions, to use all his eloquence to prevail upon the men in them to come nearer; but no intreaties could induce them to trust themselves within reach of the ships. They kept eagerly pointing to the shore with their paddles; and several of
I their

their countrymen, who stood upon the beach, held up something white, which was considered also as an invitation to land. But Captain Cook did not think proper to risk losing the advantage of a fair wind, for the sake of examining an island, that appeared to be of little consequence. For this reason, they made sail to the North, but not without getting from them, during their vicinity to the ship, the name of their island, which they called Toobouai.

There are hills in it of a considerable elevation. At the foot of the hills is a narrow border of flat land, running quite round it, edged with a white sand beach. According to the information of the men in the canoes, their island is stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several fruits and roots that are found at the other islands in this part of the Pacific Ocean.

From the conversation they had with those who came off to them, they satisfied themselves, that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the Otaheite language; a circumstance that indubitably proves them to be of the same nation.

The discovery of this island may be an object to future navigators. By the appearance of their canoes, which were carved all over, they are evidently people of some genius; if they have weapons, Captain Cook's people did not see them.

On the 12th of August they made the island of Maitea, and presently after Otaheite made its appearance. As soon as we were near enough to the latter, a number of canoes came off with two or three men in each; but, as they were common fellows, Omai took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not even seem to perceive, that he was one of their countrymen, although they conversed with him for some time. At length, a Chief, known by them before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who chanced to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four more persons, all of whom knew Omai, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing either tender or striking in their meeting. On the contrary, there seemed to be a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, having taken his brother down into the

the cabin, opened the drawer where he kept his red feathers, and gave him a few. This being presently known amongst the rest of the natives upon deck, the face of affairs was entirely turned; and Ootee, who would hardly speak to Omai before, now begged that they might be friends, and exchange names. Omai accepted of the honour, and confirmed it with a present of red feathers; and Ootee, by way of return, sent ashore for a hog. But it was evident to all present, that it was not the man, but his property, they were in love with. Had he not shewn to them his treasure of red feathers, which is the commodity in greatest estimation at the island, it is to be questioned whether they would have bestowed even a cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen; and such Captain Cook said he expected; but yet he had hopes that the valuable cargo of presents, with which the liberality of his friends in England had loaded him, would be the means of raising him into consequence, and of making him respected, and even courted, by the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This could not but have happened, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence; but, instead of that, he paid too little regard to the repeated advice of those who wished him well, and suffered himself to be duped by every designing knave.

The important news of red feathers being on board the ships, having been conveyed on shore by Omai's friends, day had no sooner begun to break next morning, than they were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people bringing hogs and fruit to market. At first, a quantity of feathers, not greater than what might be got from a tom-tit, would purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight; but as almost every body in the ships was possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it fell in its value above five hundred *per cent.* before night. However, red feathers continued more valuable than any other article; nails, and beads, and other trinkets, which, during the former voyages, had so great a run at this island, were now so much despised, that few would deign so much as to look at them.

Soon after they had anchored, Omai's sister came on board to see him; and much to the honour of them both, their meeting was marked with expressions of the tenderest affection, easier to be conceived than to be described.

This moving scene having closed, and the ship being properly moored, Captain Cook and Omai went on shore, and they immediately paid a visit to a very extraordinary man, who was called the god of Bolabola. He was an elderly man, and had lost the use of his limbs; so that he was carried from place to place upon a handbarrow. Some called him *Olla*, or *Orra*, which is the name of the god of Bolabola; but his own proper name was *Etary*. Omai presented to him a tuft of red feathers, tied to the end of a small stick; but, after a little conversation on indifferent matters with this Bolabola man, his attention was drawn to an old woman, the sister of his mother. She was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy.

Here the Captain left him surrounded by numbers of people to view a house, which some strangers had built since his former voyage. By an inscription, it appeared that two Spanish ships had been there, that came from Lima.

As it was known that cocoa-nuts were to be found in abundance in this and the neighbouring islands, it was proposed to the crews of both the ships by Captain King, to substitute the liquor which they produce, as an excellent beverage, and save their rum, which might run short; as they found the voyage would be necessarily prolonged beyond the time intended; and it would distress them much to be put to a short allowance in that article, especially in a cold climate. For these very substantial reasons, it was submitted to them, whether it would not be better to be prudent in time, and rather than to run the risk of having no spirits left, when such a cordial would be most wanted, to consent to be without their grog now, when there was to be had so excellent a liquor as that of cocoa-nuts to substitute in its place.

The Captain had the satisfaction to find, that this proposal did not remain a single moment under consideration;

ration; being unanimously approved of, immediately, without any objection. However, both the crews were indulged with grog on Saturday nights; when the companies of both ships had full allowance of it, that they might drink the healths of their female friends in England; lest these, among the pretty girls of Otaheite, should be wholly forgotten.

The next day they began some necessary operations; such as inspecting the provisions, setting the caulkers to work, &c. They also put on shore the bull, cows, horses, and sheep, and appointed two men to look after them while grazing; as it was not intended to leave any of them at this part of the island.

During the two following days it hardly ever ceased raining. The natives, nevertheless, came to them from every quarter, the news of their arrival having rapidly spread. Waheia doo, though at a distance, had been informed of it; and in the afternoon of the 16th, a Chief named Etoorea, under whose tutorage he was, brought two hogs as a present from him; and acquainted Captain Cook that he himself would come on board the day after. And so it proved; for they received a message from him the next morning, notifying his arrival, and desiring the Captain would go ashore to meet him. Accordingly, Omai and he prepared to pay him a formal visit. On this occasion, Omai, assisted by some of his friends, dressed himself; not after the English fashion, nor that of Otaheite, nor that of Tongataboo, nor in the dress of any country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all that he was possessed of.

Thus equipped, they first visited Etary, who, carried on a hand-barrow, attended them to a large house, where he was set down; and they seated themselves on each side of him. The Captain caused a piece of cloth of Tongataboo to be spread before them, on which he placed the presents he intended to make. Presently the young Chief came, attended by his mother, and several principal men, who all seated themselves at the other end of the cloth. Then a man made a speech, consisting of short and separate sentences; part of which was dictated by those about him. He was answered by one from the opposite side, near the Chief. Etary spoke next; then

Omai; and both of them were answered from the same quarter. These orations were entirely about their arrival, and connections with them. The person who spoke last, told the Captain, amongst other things, that he was authorised to make a formal surrender of the province of Tiaraboo to him, and of every thing in it; which marks very plainly, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. At length the young Chief was directed by his attendants, to come and embrace him; and, by way of confirming this treaty of friendship, they exchanged names. The ceremony being closed, he and his friends accompanied the Captain on board to dinner.

Omai had prepared a *maro*, or present, composed of red and yellow feathers, which he intended for Otoo, the king of the whole island; and, considering the place, it was a present of very great value. He was desired not to produce it now, but to give it to Otoo, with his own hands; but he had too good an opinion of the honesty and fidelity of his countrymen to take advice. Nothing would serve him, but to carry it ashore, on this occasion, and to give it to Waheia doo, to be by him forwarded to Otoo, in order to its being added to the royal *maro*. He thought, by this management, that he should oblige both Chiefs; whereas he highly disobliged the one, whose favour was of the most consequence to him, without gaining any reward from the other. What was foreseen happened; for Waheia doo kept the *maro* for himself, and only sent to Otoo a very small piece of feathers; not the twentieth part of what belonged to the magnificent present.

On the 19th, this young Chief made me a present of ten or a dozen hogs, a quantity of fruit, and some cloth. In the evening were exhibited some fireworks, which both astonished and entertained the numerous spectators.

Having taken in a fresh supply of water, and finished all other necessary operations, on the 22d they brought off the cattle and sheep, which had been put on shore here to graze; and made ready for sea.

A light breeze springing up, they soon arrived at Matavai Bay.

About

About nine o'clock in the morning, Otoo, the King of the whole island, attended by a great number of canoes full of people, came from Oparre, his place of residence, and having landed on Matavai Point, sent a message on board, expressing his desire to see Captain Cook there. Accordingly he landed, accompanied by Omai, and some of the officers. They found a prodigious number of people assembled on this occasion, and in the midst of them was the King, attended by his father, his two brothers, and three sisters. The Captain went up first, and saluted him, followed by Omai, who kneeled and embraced his legs. He had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his very best suit of clothes, and behaved with a great deal of respect and modesty. Nevertheless, very little notice was taken of him. Perhaps, envy had some share in producing this cold reception. He made the Chief a present of a large piece of red feathers, and about two or three yards of gold cloth; and the Captain gave him a suit of fine linen, a gold-laced hat, some tools, and what was of more value than all the other articles, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets in use at the Friendly Islands.

After the hurry of this visit was over, the King, and the whole royal family, went on board, followed by several canoes, laden with all kind of provisions, in quantity sufficient to have served the companies of both ships for a week. Soon after, the King's mother, who had not been present at the first interview, came on board, bringing with her a quantity of provisions, and cloth. Omai now began to be noticed by his countrymen, in consequence of their discovering his riches. This the Captain encouraged, as it was his intention to fix him with Otoo. As he intended to leave all the European animals at this island, he thought he would be able to give some instruction about the management of them, and their use. He very properly judged, that he would be respected the more, by being some distance from his native island.

But, unfortunately, poor Omai rejected all advice, and conducted himself in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of every other person of note in Otahete. He associated with none but

but vagabonds and strangers, whose sole views were to plunder him.

As soon as dinner was over, a party accompanied Otoo to Oparre, taking with them some poultry to stock the island: amongst them a peacock and hen, (a present of Lord Besborough's) also some geese and ducks.—They had the satisfaction to see the geese and ducks had begun to breed before they left the island. They found there a gander, which, the natives said, was the same that Captain Wallis had given to Oberea ten years before; several goats; and the Spanish bull, whom they kept tied to a tree, near Otoo's house. He was now the property of Etary, and had been brought from Oheitepeha to this place, in order to be shipped for Bolabola. If they had not arrived, it would have been of little consequence who had the property of him, as, without a cow, he could be of no use; and none had been left with him. The next day three cows were sent on shore, to this bull; and the bull, which had been brought also. The horse and mare, and sheep, were put ashore, at Matavai.

The Captain congratulated himself upon having thus disposed of his passengers, as he was pleased to call them; and mentions with great pleasure, the satisfaction he had in being so fortunate as to fulfil his Majesty's humane design, in sending such valuable animals, to supply the wants of two worthy nations.

On the 26th, they had a piece of ground cleared for a garden, and planted it with several articles; very few of which, it is feared, the natives will ever look after. Some melons, potatoes, and two pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before they left the place. A number of the natives got together to taste the first fruit of a vine planted by the Spaniards at Oheitepeha; but, as the grapes were still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and it was unanimously determined to tread it under foot. In that state, Omai found it by chance, and was overjoyed at the discovery; for he had a full confidence, that, if he had but grapes, he could easily make wine. Accordingly, he had several slips cut off from the tree, to carry with him; and the remains were pruned and put in order. Probably grown wife by Omai's instructions, they may now suffer the fruit

fruit
tenc

Ob

had

in

visi
Isla

tha
was

if

Hee

in

inte

fty

are

trav

he

tryn

whi

for

few

few

stom

acq

cide

Om

ner

tur

(

Spa

dia

and

no

rep

(

wa

cou

the

Ot

we

Ca

fruit to grow to perfection, and not pass so hasty a sentence upon it again.

They found here the young man who was called Ohedidee, but whose real name is Heete-heete. He had been upon a former voyage carried from Ulitea in 1773, and brought back in 1774, after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marqueses, and been on board in that extensive navigation, about seven months. He was tenacious of his good breeding, and *yes, Sir, or, if you please, Sir,* were frequently repeated by him. Heete-heete, who is a native of Bolabola, had arrived in Otaheite, about three months before, with no other intention, as it appeared, than to gratify his curiosity, or, perhaps, some other favourite passion; which are, very often, the only objects of the pursuit of other travelling gentlemen. It was evident, however, that he preferred the modes, and even garb, of his countrymen; for, though some clothes were given him, which the Admiralty Board had been pleased to send for his use, to which was added a chest of tools, and a few other articles, he declined wearing them, after a few days. This instance may be urged as a proof of the strong propensity natural to man, of returning to habits acquired at an early age, and only interrupted by accident. And, perhaps, it may be concluded, that even Omai, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, would, in a very short time after being left, return to his own native garments.

On the 27th, there was a report of the arrival of two Spanish ships. This alarmed Captain Cook, who immediately from an apprehension of war between England and that country, (of which, however, he had received no information) put the ships in a state of defence. This report upon enquiry had no foundation.

On the 27th in the evening, one of the surgeon's mates was robbed of three hatchets in an excursion up the country. This was soon known among the natives, and they all made a precipitate flight from the ships; even Otoo himself fled, and it was with some difficulty they were brought back, and tranquillity was restored. The Captain took no measures to recover the hatchets. The fellow

fellow who was entrusted with the carriage of them ran away with them. The surgeon's mate had taken them to purchase curiosities with.

At this time the people of Morea, a neighbouring isle, were in arms, and had beat some of Otoo's partizans who resided there; they applied to Captain Cook for assistance, which he with great prudence declined, being totally unacquainted with the merits of the case, and knowing he had no right to interfere in their quarrels.

The Chiefs had several meetings upon this business. Towha, a man of much weight in the island, happened not to be at Matavai at this time; and, consequently, was not present at any of these consultations. It, however, appeared that he was no stranger to what was transacted, and that he entered with more spirit into the affair, than any other Chief; for, early in the morning of the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to the *Eatooa*, to implore the assistance of the God against Eimeo. This act of worship was to be performed at the great *Morai* at Attakooroo; and Otoo's presence, it seems, was absolutely necessary on that solemn occasion.

Captain Cook and his party, by consent of the Chiefs, attended at this ceremony.

As this is a very singular account, it is laid before the reader in Captain Cook's words, omitting only a few of such passages as are least interesting.

“ In our way we landed upon a small island, which lies off Tettaha, where we found Towha and his retinue. After some little conversation between the two Chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha addressed himself to me, asking my assistance. When I excused myself he seemed angry; thinking it strange that I, who had always declared myself to be the friend of their island, would not now go and fight against its enemies. Before we parted, he gave to Otoo two or three red feathers tied up in a tuft; and a lean half-starved

starved dog was put into a canoe that was to accompany us. We then embarked again, taking on board a priest who was to assist at the solemnity.

“ As soon as we landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock in the afternoon, Otoo expressed his desire that the seamen might be ordered to remain in the boat; and that Mr. Anderson, Mr. Webber, and myself, might take off our hats as soon as we should come to the *morai*, to which we immediately proceeded, attended by a great many men, and some boys, but not one woman. We found four priests, and their attendants, or assistants, waiting for us. The dead body, or sacrifice, was in a small canoe that lay on the beach, and partly in the wash of the sea, fronting the *morai*.

“ The ceremonies now began: One of the priest's attendants brought a young plantain-tree, and laid it down before Otoo. One of the priests, seated at the *morai*, now began a long prayer. During this prayer a man, who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two bundles, seemingly of cloth. In one of them, as we afterwards found, was the royal *maro*; and the other, if I may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the *Eatboa*. As soon as the prayer was ended, the priests at the *morai*, with their attendants, went and sat down by those upon the beach, carrying with them the two bundles. Here they renewed their prayers. The dead body was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach, with the feet to the sea. The priests placed themselves around it, some sitting, and others standing; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. It was now laid in a parallel direction with the sea-shore. One of the priests then, standing at the feet of it, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was, at times, joined by the others; each holding
ing

ing in his hand a tuft of red feathers. In the course of this prayer, some hair was pulled off the head of the sacrifice, and the left eye taken out; both which were presented to Otoo, wrapped up in a green leaf. He did not, however, touch it, but gave, to the man who presented it, the tuft of feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the hair and eye, was carried back to the priests. Soon after Otoo sent to them another piece of feathers, which he had given me in the morning to keep in my pocket. During some part of this last ceremony, a king-fisher making a noise in the trees, [Otoo turned to me, saying, "That is the *Eatooa*;" and seemed to look upon it to be a good omen.

"The body was then carried a little way, with its head toward the *morai*, and laid under a tree; near which were fixed three broad thin pieces of wood, differently, but rudely, carved. The bundles of cloth were laid on a part of the *morai*; and the tufts of red feathers were placed at the feet of the sacrifice; round which the priests took their stations; and we were now allowed to go as near as we pleased. He who seemed to be the chief priest sat at a small distance, and spoke for a quarter of an hour, but with different tones and gestures; so that he seemed to expostulate with the dead person, to whom he constantly addressed himself; and sometimes asked several questions, seemingly with respect to the propriety of his having been killed. At other times he made several demands, as if the deceased either now had power himself, or interest with the Divinity, to engage him to comply with such requests. Amongst which, we understood, he asked him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine its chief, the hogs, women, and other things of the island, into their hands; which was, indeed, the express intention of the sacrifice.

He

He
an
pan
tate
this
prio
one
pra
whi
he g
ner
the
this
.

con
two
whi
wer
at t
feat
whi
two
vict
Wh
boy
was
bee
duc
cati
trai
the
kid
stor
dog
bee
ove
and
ing

He then chanted a prayer, which lasted near half an hour, in a whining, melancholy tone, accompanied by two other priests; and in which Poutatou and some others joined. In the course of this prayer, some more hair was plucked by the priest from the head of the corpse, and put upon one of the bundles. After this, the chief priest prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers which came from Towha. When he had finished, he gave them to another, who prayed in like manner. Then all the tufts of feathers were laid upon the bundles of cloth, which closed the ceremony at this place.

“ The corpse was then carried up to the most conspicuous part of the *morai*, with the feathers, the two bundles of cloth, and the drums; the last of which beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the corpse at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round it, renewed their prayers; while some of their attendants dug a hole about two feet deep, into which they threw the unhappy victim, and covered it over with earth and stones. While they were putting him into the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, and Omai said to me, that it was the *Eatoba*. During this time, a fire having been made, the dog, before mentioned, was produced, and killed, by twisting his neck, and suffocating him. The hair was singed off, and the entrails taken out, and thrown into the fire, where they were left to consume. But the heart, liver, and kidneys, were only roasted, by being laid on hot stones for a few minutes; and the body of the dog, after being besmeared with blood, which had been collected into a cocoa-nut shell, and dried over the fire, was, with the liver, &c. carried and laid down before the priests, who sat praying round the grave. They continued their ejaculations

eulations over the dog for some time, while two men, at intervals, beat on two drums very loud; and a boy screamed, as before, in a loud, shrill voice, three different times. This, as we were told, was to invite *E. tooa* to feast on the banquet that they had prepared for him. As soon as the priests had ended their prayers, the carcase of the dog, with what belonged to it, were laid on a *whatta*, or scaffold, about six feet high, that stood close by, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had lately been sacrificed, and, at this time, emitted an intolerable stench. This kept us at a greater distance than would otherwise have been required of us; for, after the victim was removed from the sea-side toward the *morai*, we were allowed to approach as near as we pleased. Indeed, after that, neither seriousness nor attention were much observed by the spectators. When the dog was put upon the *whatta*, the priests and attendants gave a kind of shout, which closed the ceremonies for the present. The day being now also closed, we were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where we were entertained, and lodged for the night. We had been told, that the religious rites were to be renewed in the morning; and I would not leave the place, while any thing remained to be seen.

“ Being unwilling to lose any part of the solemnity, some of us repaired to the scene of action pretty early, but found nothing going forward. However, soon after a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same *whatta* with the others. About eight o'clock, Otoo took us again to the *morai*, where the priests, and a great number of men, were, by this time, assembled. The two bundles occupied the place in which we had seen them deposited the preceding evening; the two drums stood in the front of the *morai*, but somewhat nearer

nearer it than before ; and the priests were beyond them. Otoo placed himself between the two drums, and desired me to stand by him.

“ The ceremony began with bringing a young plantain-tree, and laying it down at the King's feet. After this, a prayer was repeated by the priests, who held in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers, which I had given to Otoo on my first arrival, and had been consecrated to this use. When the priests had made an end of the prayer, they changed their station, placing themselves between us and the *morai* ; and one of them, the same person who had acted the principal part the day before, began another prayer, which lasted about half an hour. During the continuance of this, the tufts of feathers were, one by one, carried and laid upon the ark of the *Eatooa*.

“ Some little time after, four pigs were produced ; one of which was immediately killed ; and the others were taken to a sty, hard by, probably reserved for some future occasion of sacrifice. One of the bundles was now untied ; and it was found, as I before observed, to contain the *maro*, with which these people invest their kings ; and which seems to answer, in some degree, to the European ensigns of royalty. It was carefully taken out of the cloth, in which it had been wrapped up, and spread, at full length, upon the ground before the priests. It is a girdle, about five yards long, and fifteen inches broad ; and, from its name, seems to be put on in the same manner as is the common *maro*, or piece of cloth, used by these people to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with red and yellow feathers ; but mostly with the latter, taken from a dove found upon the island. The one end was bordered with eight pieces, each about the size and shape of a horse-

shoe, having their edges fringed with black feathers. The other end was forked, and the points were of different lengths. The feathers were in square compartments, ranged in two rows, and otherwise so disposed, as to produce a pleasing effect. They had been first pasted, or fixed, upon some of their own country cloth; and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant which Captain Wallis had displayed, and left flying ashore, the first time he landed at Matavai. This was what they told us; and we had no reason to doubt it, as we could easily trace the remains of an English pendant. About six or eight inches square of the *maro* was unornamented; there being no feathers upon that space, except a few that had been sent by Wa-headooa, as already mentioned. The priests made a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and, if I mistook not, they called it the prayer of the *maro*. When it was finished, the badge of royalty was carefully folded up, put into the cloth, and deposited again upon the *morai*.

“ The other bundle, which I have distinguished by the name of the ark, was next opened at one end. But we were not allowed to go near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The information we received was, that the *Eatooa*, to whom they had been sacrificing, and whose name is *Ooro*, was concealed in it; or rather, what is supposed to represent him. This sacred repository is made of the twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa-nut, shaped somewhat like a large fid, or sugar-loaf; that is, roundish, with one end much thicker than the other. We had, very often, got small ones from different people, but never knew their use before.

“ By this time, the pig, that had been killed, was cleaned, and the entrails taken out. These happened

happened to have a considerable share of those convulsive motions, which often appear, in different parts, after an animal is killed; and this was considered by the spectators as a very favourable omen to the expedition, on account of which the sacrifices had been offered. After being exposed for some time, that those who chose might examine their appearances, the entrails were carried to the priests, and laid down before them. While one of their number prayed, another inspected the entrails more narrowly, and kept turning them gently with a stick. When they had been sufficiently examined, they were thrown into the fire, and left to consume. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, &c. were now put upon the *whatta*, where the dog had been deposited the day before; and then all the feathers, except the ostrich plume, were inclosed with the *Eatooa* in the ark; and the solemnity finally closed.

“ Four double canoes lay upon the beach, before the place of sacrifice, all the morning. On the fore-part of each of these, was fixed a small platform, covered with palm-leaves, tied in mysterious knots; and this also is called a *morai*. Some cocoa-nuts, plantains, pieces of bread-fruit, fish, and other things, lay upon each of these naval *morais*. We were told, that they belonged to the *Eatooa*, and that they were to attend the fleet designed to go against Eimeo.

The unhappy victim, offered to the object of their worship upon this occasion, seemed to be a middle-aged man; and, as we were told, was a *towtow*; that is, one of the lowest class of the people. But, after all my inquiries, I could not learn, that he had been pitched upon, on account of any particular crime, committed by him, meriting death. It is certain, however, that they generally make choice of such guilty persons.

sons for their sacrifices ; or else of common, low, fellows, who stroll about, from place to place, and from island to island, without having any fixed abode, or any visible way of getting an honest livelihood ; of which description of men, enough are to be met with at these islands. Having had an opportunity of examining the appearance of the body of the poor sufferer, now offered up, I could observe, that it was bloody about the head and face, and a good deal bruised upon the right temple ; which marked the manner of his being killed. And we were told, that he had been privately knocked on the head with a stone.

“ Those who are devoted to suffer, in order to perform this bloody act of worship, are never apprised of their fate, till the blow is given that puts an end to their existence. Whenever any one of the great Chiefs thinks a human sacrifice necessary, on any particular emergency, he pitches upon the victim. Some of his trusty servants are then sent, who fall upon him suddenly, and put him to death with a club, or by stoning him. The King is next acquainted with it, whose presence, at the solemn rites that follow, is, as I was told, absolutely necessary ; and, indeed, on the present occasion, we could observe that Otoo bore a principal part.

“ It is much to be regretted, that a practice so horrid in its own nature, and so destructive of that inviolable right of self-preservation, which every one is born with, should be found still existing. Though we should suppose, that never more than one person is sacrificed, on any single occasion, at Otaheite, it is more than probable, that these occasions happen so frequently, as to make a shocking waste of the human race ; for I counted no less than forty-nine skulls, of former victims,
lying

lying before the *morai*, where we saw one more added to the number. And as none of those skulls had, as yet, suffered any considerable change from the weather, it may hence be inferred, that no great length of time had elapsed, since, at least, this considerable number of unhappy wretches had been offered upon this altar of blood."

After this singular scene was finished, to which the Captain seems to have paid particular attention, they all returned to the ships, but not before he had spoken his sentiments freely upon such a horrid practice. Upon this occasion Omai was employed as interpreter; and he entered into it with so much spirit, that the Chief seemed to be in great wrath; especially when he was told, that if he had put a man to death in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from being hanged for it. Upon this he exclaimed, *maeno! maeno!* [vile! vile!] and would not hear another word. During this debate, many of the natives were present, chiefly the attendants and servants of Towha himself; and when Omai began to explain the punishment that would be inflicted in England upon the greatest man, if he killed the meanest servant, they seemed to listen with great attention; and were, probably, of a different opinion from that of their master, on this subject.

On the 4th, a party dined ashore with Omai, who gave excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, and pork. There was also a large pudding. It was composed of bread-fruit, ripe plantains, taro, and palm or pandanus nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of juice, pressed from cocoa-nut kernels, was put into a large tray, or wooden vessel. The other articles, hot from the oven, were deposited in this vessel; and a few hot stones were also put in, to make the contents simmer. Three or four men made use of sticks to stir the several ingredients, till they were incorporated one with another, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil; so that the whole mass, at last, became of the consistency of a hasty-pudding.

ing. Some of the puddings are excellent; and few that are made in England equal them. The Captain became so fond of them, that he seldom afterwards dined without one, when it was to be had: he was a spectator of the whole process in making it.

On the 5th, they were so unfortunate as to lose a young ram of the Cape breed, that had been lambed on board; this was a great loss, as it was the only one they had of that breed. It was killed by a dog.

In the evening of the 7th, they played off some fireworks before a great concourse of people. Some were highly entertained, but the greater number were terribly frightened. A table-rocket was the last: it flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in a moment; even the most resolute among them fled with precipitation.

Otoo, who was very attentive to his visitors, treated them with what may be called a play. His three sisters were the actresses, and the dresses that they appeared in were new and elegant; that is, more so than had been usually met with at any of these islands.

A chief of this country, named Tee, whom Captain Cook knew upon his former voyage, had died about four months before his present arrival; however, he had an opportunity of seeing the body, which was embalmed: it was, as he says, entire in every part, and what was still more extraordinary, putrefaction seemed scarcely to be begun, for there was not the least disagreeable smell proceeding from it, though the climate is one of the hottest; and Tee had been dead above four months. The only remarkable alteration that had happened was, a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes; but the hair and nails were in their original state, and still adhered firmly: and the several joints were quite pliable, or in that kind of relaxed state which happens to persons who faint suddenly. On enquiring into the method of effecting this preservation of their dead bodies, he was informed, that soon after their death they are disembowelled, by drawing the intestines, and other *viscera*, out at the *anus*; and the whole cavity is then filled or stuffed with cloth, introduced through the same part; that when any moisture appeared

on:

on the skin, it was carefully dried up, and the bodies afterwards rubbed all over with a large quantity of perfumed cocoa-nut oil; which, being frequently repeated, preserved them a great many months; but that, at last, they gradually moulder away.

On the 9th, being again honoured with Otoo's company, the Captain's Cook and Clerke, mounted on horseback, took an airing on the plain of Matavai; which surprised the inhabitants, who were assembled in numbers beyond all description, gazing upon them with as much astonishment as if they had been centaurs. Omai indeed had, once or twice before this, attempted to get on horseback; but he had as often been thrown off, before he could contrive to seat himself: so that this was the first time they had seen any body ride a horse. This was afterwards repeated every day by one or another of the officers; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued still unabated. They were exceedingly delighted with these animals, after they had seen the use that was made of them; and, as far as could be judged, they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the other novelties put together, that their European visitors had carried amongst them. Both the horse and mare were in good case, and looked extremely well.

Otoo was very careful to prevent his people pilfering any thing, either on board, or on the shore; but he was mean enough to collect contributions from such girls as had private connections with the sailors, which was generally done every morning.

Having got all their water on board, the ships being caulked, the rigging overhauled, and every thing put in order, they began to think of leaving the island, that they might have sufficient time to spare for visiting the others in this neighbourhood.

September 21, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and was paddled all along the shore of the bay; so that every one had a full view of him. His coat of mail did not draw the attention of his countrymen so much as might have been expected. Some of them, indeed, had seen a part of it before; and there were others, again, who had taken

ken such dislike to Omai, from his imprudent conduct at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing, however singular, that was exhibited by him.

Captain Cook, being indisposed, was obliged to decline an invitation from Otoo, and confine himself to his ship, when Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and eight more women, came on board to him to stay all night, and endeavour to cure his disorder, which was of the rheumatic kind; he accepted their offer, and ordered a bed to be spread upon the cabin floor. Their manner of treating him he describes in the following words:

“ I was desired to lay myself down amongst them. Then, as many of them as could get round me, began to squeeze me with both hands, from head to foot, but more particularly on the parts where the pain was lodged, till they made my bones crack, and my flesh became a perfect mummy. In short, after undergoing this discipline about a quarter of an hour, I was glad to get away from them. However, the operation gave me immediate relief, which encouraged me to submit to another rubbing-down before I went to bed; and it was so effectual, that I found myself pretty easy all the night after. My female physicians repeated their prescription the next morning, before they went ashore, and again in the evening, when they returned on board; after which I found the pains entirely removed: and the cure being perfected, they took their leave of me the following morning. This they call *romee*; an operation which, in my opinion, far exceeds the flesh-brush, or any thing of the kind that we make use of externally. It is universally practised among these islanders, being sometimes performed by the men, but more generally by the women. If, at any time, one appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they immediately begin to practise the *romee* upon his legs; and I have always found it to have an exceedingly good effect.”

Before

Best
that t
other

Cap
which
had g
spying
days,
use to
and to
he ha

very a
Toote
him h
Clerk
came
accept
him.

of the
sious
would
him i
“Too
Clerk
not m
he acc
be tol

On
canoe
ments
toget
Cook
port.

On
as he
in-lav
ance,
view

On
Capt
take

Before they left this place, they had the pleasure to find that the geese and the ducks were sitting, and that the other animals were in a promising way.

Captain Cook gives an instance of Otoo's conduct, which shews these people have much address or art. He had given him, amongst a variety of other presents, a spying-glass; after having it in his possession two or three days, tired of its novelty, and probably finding it of no use to him, he carried it privately to Captain Clerke, and told him, that, as he had been his very good friend, he had got a present for him, which he knew would be very agreeable. "But," says Otoo, "you must not let *Toote* * know it, because he wants it, and I would not let him have it." He then put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands, at the same time assuring him that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke at first declined accepting it, but Otoo insisted upon it, and left it with him. Some days after, he put Captain Clerke in mind of the glass, who, though he did not want it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking that a few axes would be of more use at this island, produced four to give him in return. Otoo no sooner saw this, than he said, "*Toote* offered me five for it." "Well," says Captain Clerke, "if that be the case, your friendship for me shall not make you a loser, and you shall have six axes." These he accepted; but he desired again, that *Toote* might not be told what he had done.

One of the chiefs gave Omai a very handsome double canoe, in return for some of his presents; this he ornamented with ten or a dozen flags and pendants, and drew together, by this gay display, as many people, Captain Cook says, "as a man of war would in an European port."

Omai would not have conducted himself so improperly as he did, in many instances, but for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few more of their acquaintance, engrossed him entirely to themselves, with no other view than to strip him of every thing he had got.

On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed the Captain, that he had got a canoe, which he desired him to take and carry home, as a present from him to his Majesty

* *His manner of pronouncing Cook.*

jefty the King of Great Britain, whom he called *Earee rabin no Pretane*; it being the only thing, he said, that he could send worth his acceptance. The Captain was not a little pleased with Otoo for this mark of his gratitude. It was a thought entirely his own; and it shewed, that he fully understood to whom he was indebted for the most valuable presents he had received. As it was too large to take on board, he was thanked for his good intention; but it would have pleased him much better, if his present could have been accepted.

They were detained here some days longer than they expected, by light breezes from the West. At length, at three o'clock in the afternoon of the 29th, the wind came at East, and they weighed anchor.

As soon as the ships were under sail, at the request of Otoo, and to gratify the curiosity of his people, seven guns loaded with shot were fired. Otoo being desirous of seeing the ship sail, they made a stretch out to sea, and then in again; then he took his leave, and went on shore in his canoe.

It was a little extraordinary, that the friendly intercourse which subsisted between our voyagers and the people of this island, had never once been suspended by any untoward accident; nor had there been a theft committed that deserves to be mentioned.

It is not always in the power of the Chiefs to prevent robberies; they are frequently robbed themselves, and complain of it as a great evil. Otoo left the most valuable things he had in Captain Cook's possession, till the day before they sailed; and the reason he gave for it was, that they were no where so safe. Since the bringing in of new riches, the inducements to piffering must have increased. The Chiefs, sensible of this, are now extremely desirous of chests. One was made for Otoo, the dimensions of which, according to his own directions, were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts were not a sufficient security; but it must be large enough for two persons to sleep upon, by way of guarding it in the night.

The Spaniards left them, besides the bull already mentioned, some goats, hogs, and dogs, also a ram. The hogs are of a large kind; have already greatly improved the

the b
the t
are a
of a
the S
I th
islan
all,
them
A
of th
stood
cano
neces
were
on b
N
with
few l
bead
here
In
Chie
the f
sion
T
self
forty
rather
age.
to sh
their
there
ally
our g
hair,
bein
C
his l
but a
tend
confe
best

the breed originally found by us upon the island ; and, at the time of our late arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in tolerable plenty, there being hardly a Chief of any note who has not got some. As to the dogs that the Spaniards put ashore, which are of two or three sorts, I think, says the Captain, they would have done the island a great deal more service, if they had hanged them all, instead of leaving them upon it. It was to one of them that his young ram fell a victim.

As it was intended to touch at Eimeo, in the morning of the 30th of September, after leaving Otaheite, they stood for the North end of the island. Omai, in his canoe, having arrived there long before, had taken some necessary measures to shew the place. However, they were not without pilates, having several men of Otaheite on board, and not a few women.

Next morning several canoes arrived, which brought with them abundance of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs. These they exchanged for hatchets, nails, and beads ; for red feathers were not so much sought after here as at Otaheite.

In the morning of the 2d of October, Maheine, the Chief of the island, paid them a visit. He approached the ship with great caution, and it required some persuasion to get him on board.

This Chief, who, with a few followers, had made himself in a manner independent of Otaheite, is between forty and fifty years old. He is bald-headed, which is rather an uncommon appearance in these islands, at that age. He wore a kind of turban, and seemed ashamed to shew his head. They had seen the head of one of their people shaved, who was caught stealing ; they therefore concluded, that this was the punishment usually inflicted by us upon all thieves ; and one or two of our gentlemen, whose heads were not overburthened with hair, we could observe, lay under violent suspicions of being *tetos*, or thieves.

Captain Cook says, it was his intention to have taken his leave of this place the next day, October the sixth ; but an accident happened that prevented it, and was attended with great trouble, and also very disagreeable consequences. This transaction, the editor has thought it best to give in the Captain's words.

“ We had sent our goats ashore, to graze, with two men to look after them; notwithstanding which precaution, the natives had contrived to steal one of them this evening. The loss of this goat would have been of little consequence, if it had not interfered with my views of stocking other islands with these animals; but this being the case, it became necessary to recover it if possible. The next morning we got intelligence, that it had been carried to Maheine, the Chief, who was at this time at Parowroah harbour. Two old men offered to conduct any of my people, whom I might think proper to send to him, to bring back the goat. Accordingly, I dispatched them in a boat, charged with a threatening message to Maheine, if the goat was not immediately given up to me, and also the thief.

“ Not thinking that any one would dare to steal a second, at the very time I was taking measures to recover the first, the goats were put ashore again this morning; and in the evening a boat was sent to bring them on board. As our people were getting them into the boat, one was carried off undiscovered. It being immediately missed, I made no doubt of recovering it without much trouble, as there had not been time to carry it to any considerable distance. Ten or twelve of the natives set out, soon after, different ways to bring it back, or to look for it; for not one of them would own that it was stolen, but all tried to persuade us that it had strayed into the woods; and night coming on, put a stop to all farther search. About this time the boat returned with the other goat, bringing also one of the men who had stolen it; the first instance of the kind that I had met with amongst these islands.

“ Though they had restored one, they seemed resolved to keep the other; which was a she-goat, and

and l
lutio
appli
ment
that
the S
of th
for it
cond
on m
retur
office
to re
to th
guide
“

the o
asked
shoul
me t
and
blood
to m
day-
five
men.
At t
son,
part
“

run
he fa
fully
his a
both
did
nati

and big with kid. I was equally fixed in my resolution that they should not keep it. I therefore applied to the two old men who had been instrumental in getting back the first. They told me, that this had been carried to Watea, a district on the South side of the island, by Hamoa, the Chief of that place; but that, if I would send any body for it, it would be delivered up. They offered to conduct some of my people cross the island; but on my learning from them, that a boat might go and return the same day, I sent one, with two petty officers, Mr. Roberts and Mr. Shuttleworth; one to remain with the boat, in case she could not get to the place, while the other should go with the guides, and one or two of our people.

“ Late in the evening the boat returned, and the officers informed me they had not succeeded. I asked Omai and the two old men, what methods I should next take; they, without hesitation, advised me to go with a party of men into the country, and shoot every soul I should meet with. This bloody counsel I could not follow; but I resolved to march a party of men cross the island; and, at day-break the next morning, set out with thirty-five of my people, accompanied by one of the old men, by Omai, and three or four of his attendants. At the same time, I ordered Lieutenant Williamson, with three armed boats, round the Western part of the island, to meet us.

“ The first man that we met with upon our march, run some risk of his life; for Omai, the moment he saw him, asked me if he should shoot him; so fully was he persuaded, that I was going to carry his advice into execution. I immediately ordered both him and our guide to make it known, that I did not intend to hurt, much less to kill, a single native.

“ As we began to ascend the ridge of hills over which lay our road, we got intelligence, that the goat had been carried that way before us. We then crossed the ridge without making any further enquiry, till we came within sight of Watea, where some people shewed us Hamoa’s house, and told us, that the goat was there. But when I reached the house, the few people we met with denied that they had ever seen it ; even Hamoa himself came, and made the same declaration.

“ On our first coming to the place, I observed several men running to and fro in the woods, with clubs and bundles of darts in their hands ; and Omai, who followed them, had some stones thrown at him ; so that it seemed as if they had intended to oppose any step I should take, by force, but on seeing my party was too strong, had dropped the design. I was confirmed in this notion, by observing that all their houses were empty. After getting a few of the people of the place together, I desired Omai to expostulate with them on the absurdity of the conduct they were pursuing ; and to tell them, that, from the testimony of many on whom I could depend, I was well assured, that the goat was in their possession ; and therefore insisted upon its being delivered up, otherwise I would burn their houses and canoes. But, notwithstanding all that I or Omai could say, they continued to deny their having any knowledge of it. The consequence was, that I set fire to six or eight houses, which were presently consumed, with two or three war-canoes that lay contiguous to them. This done, I marched off to join the boats, which were about seven or eight miles from us ; and, in our way, we burnt six more war-canoes, without any one attempting to oppose us.

“ At length, about four in the afternoon, we got to the boats, that were waiting at Warrarade, the district

dift
Ch
pla
a fi
the
abo
arri
tha
fo t
the

men
tha
him
mig
as
An
ear
bre
hea
boa
at t
war
har
car
tur
my
bac
to
de

for
gr
m

wa
th

district belonging to Tiarataboonou; but this Chief, as well as all the principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though I touched not a single thing that was their property, as they were the friends of Otoo. After resting ourselves here about an hour, we set out for the ships, where we arrived about eight o'clock in the evening. At that time, no account of the goat had been received; so that the operations of this day had not produced the desired effect.

“ Early next morning I dispatched one of Omai's men to Maheine, with this peremptory message, that if he persisted in his refusal, I would not leave him a single canoe upon the island, and that he might expect a continuation of hostilities as long as the stolen animal remained in his possession. And, that the messenger might see that I was in earnest, before he left me, I sent the carpenter to break up three or four canoes that lay ashore at the head of the harbour. The plank was carried on board, as materials for building a house for Omai, at the place where he intended to settle. I afterward went, properly accompanied, to the next harbour, where we broke up three or four more canoes, and burnt an equal number; and then returned on board about seven in the evening. On my arrival, I found that the goat had been brought back. But in consequence of the message I sent to the Chief in the morning, it was judged prudent to trifle with me no longer.

“ Thus ended this troublesome, and rather unfortunate, business; which could not be more regretted on the part of the natives, than it was on mine.”

The next morning the intercourse with the natives was renewed; from whence it may be concluded that they were conscious it was their own fault. About nine o'clock

o'clock the ships weighed with a breeze down the harbour; and steered for Huaheine, attended by Omai in his canoe.

The next morning it was in sight. At noon they anchored at the North entrance of Owharre harbour, which is on the West side of the island. Omai entered the harbour just before, in his canoe, but did not land. Nor did he take much notice of any of his countrymen, though many crowded to see him; but far more of them came off to the ships, insomuch that the sailors could with difficulty do their duty. The passengers presently acquainted them with what had been done at Eimeo, and multiplied the number of houses and canoes that were destroyed, by ten at least. Captain Cook says, he was not sorry for this exaggerated account, as he saw it made an impression upon all who heard it; from which he hoped it would induce the inhabitants of this island to behave better than they had done during his former visits.

The arrival of the ships brought all the principal people of the island to them, on the next morning, being the 13th. It was now high time to think of settling Omai. Huaheine was mentioned as the proper place. Captain Cook therefore resolved to avail himself of the presence of the chief men of the island, and to make this proposal to them.

The Captain got ready to pay a formal visit to Tai-rectarea, meaning then to introduce this business. Omai dressed himself very properly on the occasion; and prepared a handsome present for the Chief himself, and another for his *Eatooa*. Indeed, after he had got clear of the gang that surrounded him at Otaheite, he behaved with such prudence as to gain respect.

Omai sat down by the Captain, and they entered upon business. Omai's establishment was then proposed to the assembled Chiefs.

He acquainted them, "That he had been carried by the English into their country, where he was well received by the great King and his *Earees*, and treated with every mark of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, enriched, by their liberality, with a variety of articles, which would prove very useful

ful to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to remain with him, several new and valuable animals had been left at Otaheite, which would soon multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the islands in the neighbourhood. He then signified to them, that it was Captain Cook's earnest request, that they would give him a piece of land to build a house upon, and to raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that if this could not be obtained for him in Huaheine, either by gift or by purchase, the Captain was determined to carry him to Ulietea, and fix him there."

The Chief immediately replied, that the whole island was at Captain Cook's disposal, therefore he might settle Omai where he pleased; but the Captain, from prudent motives, desired the Chiefs would assign the particular spot, and the exact quantity of land, which they would allot for the settlement. After a short consultation among themselves, his request was granted by general consent; and the ground immediately pitched upon, adjoining to the house where their meeting was held. The extent along the shore of the harbour was about two hundred yards; and its depth, to the foot of the hill, somewhat more; but a proportional part of the hill was included in the grant.

The carpenters of both ships were now set to work to build a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the European commodities that were his property. At the same time, some hands were employed in making a garden for his use, planting shaddocks, vines, pine-apples, melons, and the seeds of several other vegetable articles; all of which the Captain had the satisfaction of observing to be in a flourishing state before he left the island.

Omai now began seriously to attend to his own affairs, and repented heartily of his ill-judged prodigality while at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine, a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law; the sister being married. But these did not plunder him, as he had lately been by his other relations. The Captain however observes, that though they were too honest to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any positive good. They had neither authority nor influence

to protect his person, nor his property ; and, in that helpless situation, it was apprehended that he run great risk of being stripped of every thing he had got.

A man who is richer than his neighbours is sure to be envied by numbers, who wish to see him brought down to their own level. But in countries where civilization, law, and religion, impose their restraints, the rich have a reasonable ground of security. And, besides, there being, in all such communities, a diffusion of property, no single individual need fear, that the efforts of all the poorer sort can ever be united to injure him, exclusively of others who are equally the objects of envy. It was very different with Omai. He was to live amongst those who are strangers, in a great measure, to any other principle of action besides the immediate impulse of their natural feelings. But, what was his principal danger, he was to be placed in the very singular situation, of being the only rich man in the community to which he was to belong. And having, by a fortunate connection with his English friends, got into his possession an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure, which none of his countrymen could create by any art or industry of their own ; while all coveted a share of this envied wealth, it was natural to apprehend, that all would be ready to join in attempting to strip its sole proprietor.

To prevent this, if possible, he was advised to make a proper distribution of some of his moveables, to two or three of the principal Chiefs ; who, being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to take him under their patronage, and protect him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow this advice ; he did so, and it had the desired effect : and before the Captain left the island, he informed them that it was his intention to return again, after being absent the usual time ; and that if he did not find Omai in the same state of security in which he was now to leave him, all those whom he should then discover to have been his enemies, might expect to feel the weight of his resentment.

The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time is incredible ; the damage they did was very considerable ; and every method devised to destroy them proved ineffectual. These animals, which at first were
a nuisance,

a nuisance
pelt ;
their
a few
pieces
Th
ting
eaten
them
these
not o
even
looser
also d
tered
badly
Th
ried o
witho
even
Mr. I
vered
unhu
punif
and
Th
for
and
threa
Eng
doin
conf
him
facti
him
O
able
of o
expo
gazi
plat
dom

a nuisance, like all other insects, had now become a real pest; and so destructive, that few things were free from their ravages. If food of any kind was exposed only for a few minutes, it was covered with them; and they soon pierced it full of holes, resembling a honey-comb.

They were uncommonly fond of ink, so that the writing on the labels fastened to different articles, was quite eaten out; and the only thing that preserved books from them, was the closeness of the binding, which prevented these devourers getting between the leaves. They now not only did all the mischief mentioned above, but had even got amongst the rigging; so that when a sail was loosened, thousands of them fell upon the decks. They also did great mischief to the bread, which was so bespattered with their excrement, that it would have been badly relished by delicate feeders.

The intercourse of trade and friendly offices, was carried on between the ships companies and the natives, without being disturbed by any one accident, 'till the evening of the 22d, when a man found means to get into Mr. Bayly's observatory, and carry off a sextant undiscovered. It was, however, with great difficulty recovered unhurt, and the thief was sent on board the ship to be punished, which was done by shaving his head and beard, and cutting off both his ears.

This very fellow was not, however, deterred thereby; for he soon after destroyed and carried off several vines and cabbage-plants in Omai's grounds; and publickly threatened to kill him, and burn his house, as soon as the English should leave the island. To prevent the fellow's doing any more mischief, the Captain had him seized, and confined again on board the ship, with a view of carrying him off the island; and it seemed to give general satisfaction to the Chiefs, that he intended thus to dispose of him.

Omai's house being nearly finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th. Amongst a variety of other useless articles was a box of toys, which, when exposed to public view, seemed greatly to please the gazing multitude. But, as to his pots, kettles, dishes, plates, drinking-mugs, glasses, and the whole train of domestic accommodations, hardly any one of his countrymen

trymen would so much as look at them. Omai himself now began to think, that they were of no manner of use to him; that a baked hog was more savory food than a boiled one; that a plantain-leaf made as good a dish or plate as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as a black-jack: and therefore he very wisely disposed of as many of these articles of English furniture for the kitchen and pantry, as he could find purchasers for, amongst the people of the ships; receiving from them, in return, hatchets, and other iron tools, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world, and added more to his distinguishing superiority over those with whom he was to pass the remainder of his days.

In the long list of the presents bestowed upon him in England, fire-works had not been forgot. Some of these were exhibited, in the evening of the 28th, before a great concourse of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and fear.

Between midnight and four in the morning of the 30th, the Bolabola man, who was in confinement, found means to make his escape out of the ship. He carried with him the shackle of the bilboe-bolt that was about his leg. Upon enquiry, it appeared, that not only the sentry placed over the prisoner, but the whole watch, upon the quarter-deck where he was confined, had laid themselves down to sleep. The Captain was not a little pleased to hear afterward, that the fellow who escaped, had transported himself to Ulitea.

As soon as Omai was settled in his new habitation, they began to think of leaving the island, and getting every thing off from the shore, except the horse and mare, and a goat big with kid; which were left in the possession of Omai, with whom they were now finally to part. A boar and two sows of the English breed were added to the above, and he had got a sow or two of his own. The horse covered the mare while they were at Otaheite; so that a breed of horses in these islands is likely to have succeeded.

The history of Omai will, perhaps, interest a very numerous class of readers, more than any other occurrence of the voyage. Every circumstance, therefore, which

may

may so
situati
preserv
comple
picked
Zeala
and for
family
can be
yet be
becam
dispos

The
eigh
and, i
that t
to pul

His
and c
and t
these
war,
there
bilty
perio
befon
most
dinne
very

Be
incri

On
of th
who
after
of al
resol

may serve to convey a satisfactory account of the exact situation in which he was left, will be thought worth preserving; and the following particulars are added, to complete the view of his domestic establishment. He had picked up at Otaheite four or five *Toutous*; the two New Zealand youths remained with him; and his brother, and some others, joined him at Huaheine; so that his family consisted already of eight or ten persons; if that can be called a family, to which not a single female as yet belonged, nor was likely to belong, unless its master became less volatile. At present Omai did not seem at all disposed to take unto himself a wife.

The house erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen, and ten feet high. It was composed of boards; and, in building it, as few nails as possible were used, that there might be no inducement, from the love of iron, to pull it down.

His European weapons consisted of a musket, bayonet, and cartouch-box; a fowling-piece; two pair of pistols; and two or three swords or cutlasses. The possession of these made him quite happy. Yet such implements of war, in the hands of one whose prudent use of them there is some grounds for mistrusting, will, in all probability, increase his dangers rather than establish his superiority. After he had got on shore every thing that belonged to him, and was settled in his house, he had most of the officers of both ships, two or three times, to dinner; and his table was always well supplied with the very best provisions that the island produced.

Before Captain Cook sailed, he caused the following inscription to be cut upon the outside of his house:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

Naves { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
 { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On the second of November, both the ships sailed out of the harbour, and all took their leave, except Omai, who remained till they were at sea. In an hour or two after he went ashore, taking a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained himself with a manly resolution, till he came to Captain Cook. Then his utmost

utmost efforts to conceal his tears failed; and Mr. King, who went in the boat, said that he wept all the time in going ashore.

It was no small satisfaction to reflect, that he was brought safe back; and yet, such is the strange nature of human affairs, that it was probable he was left in a less desirable situation, than he was in before his connexion with the English. The advantages he received, placed him in a more hazardous situation, with respect to his personal safety. Omai, from being much caressed in England, lost sight of his original condition; and never considered in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge or of riches, would be estimated by his countrymen, at his return; which were the only things he could have to recommend him to them now, more than before, and on which he could build either his future greatness or happiness. He seemed even to have mistaken their genius in this respect, and, in some measure, to have forgotten their customs: otherwise he must have known the extreme difficulty there would be in getting himself admitted as a person of rank, where there is, perhaps, no instance of a man's being raised from an inferior station by the greatest merit. Had he made a proper use of the presents he brought with him, this, with the knowledge he had acquired by travelling so far, might have enabled him to form the most useful connexions. But instances have already been given of his childish inattention to this obvious means of advancing his interest. His father was, doubtless, a man of considerable property in Ulitea, when that island was conquered by those of Bolabola; and, with many others, sought refuge in Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with some other children; who, by that means, became totally dependent. In this situation he was taken up by Captain Furneaux, and carried to England.

At the Friendly Islands he squandered away much of his European treasure very unnecessarily; and he was equally imprudent at Tiaraboo, where he could have no view of making friends, as he had not any intention of remaining there. At Matavai, he continued the same inconsiderate behaviour, till an absolute stop was put to his profusion by Captain Cook. He might have settled

to great
given
former
mittin
lessene
always
of statu
natura

Wh
were n
and do
on boar
the off
highest
nor wi
their
He ha
applic
to exp
our ar
those t
little d
to per
mentio
greater
Omai'
left up
have g
multip
and th
place

Om
back
offer
but all
to Lor
The
to the
over fo
to, till
the So

to great advantage in Otaheite, if his conduct had not given offence to Otoo, who was at first his friend: he had formerly lived there several years. The objection to admitting him to some rank would have also been much lessened, if he had fixed at Otaheite; as a native will always find it more difficult to accomplish such a change of state amongst his countrymen, than a stranger, who naturally claims respect.

Whatever faults belonged to Omai's character, they were more than overbalanced by his great good-nature and docile disposition. During the whole time he was on board, he seldom gave offence either to the Captain or the officers. His grateful heart always retained the highest sense of the favours he had received in England; nor will he ever forget those who honoured him with their protection and friendship during his stay there. He had a tolerable share of understanding, but wanted application and perseverance to exert it. We are not to expect that Omai will be able to introduce many of our arts and customs amongst them, or much improve those to which they have been long habituated; there is little doubt, however, but that he will endeavour to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables before mentioned, which will be no small acquisition. But the greatest benefit these islands are likely to receive from Omai's travels, will be in the animals that have been left upon them; which, probably, they never would have got, had he not come to England. When these multiply, of which I think there is little doubt, Otaheite, and the Society Islands, will equal, if not exceed, any place in the known world, for provisions.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he brought back with him of our liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to go with the Captain; but all such applications were totally rejected, agreeably to Lord Sandwich's instructions.

The boat which carried Omai ashore having returned to the ship, she was hoisted in, and immediately stood over for Ulietea. At ten o'clock at night, they brought to, till four the next morning, when they made sail round the South end of the island, for the harbour of Ohama-

meno. At noon, they were, by calms and light airs, still a league from the entrance of the harbour.

Next morning, being the 4th, the ship, head and stern, was moored at the head of the harbour, and opened one of the ballast-ports. From this a slight stage was made to the land, being at the distance of about twenty feet, with a view to get clear of some of the rats that continued to infest them. The Discovery moored likewise.

Nothing worthy of note happened, till the night between the 12th and 13th, when John Harrison, a marine, who was sentinel at the observatory, deserted, carrying with him his musquet and accoutrements. Having in the morning got intelligence which way he had moved off, a party was sent after him; but they returned in the evening, after an ineffectual inquiry and search. The next day, having got information that he was at a place called Hamoa, the Captain went thither with two armed boats.

He was found with the musquet lying before him, sitting between two women, who immediately rose up to plead in his behalf. As it was highly proper to discourage such proceedings, they were ordered with a frown to begone. Upon this they burst into tears and walked off. Paha, the Chief of the district, now came with a plantain tree, and a sucking pig, which he would have presented as a peace-offering; but the Captain rejected it, and having embarked, with the deserter, on board the first boat that arrived, returned to the ships. The fellow had nothing to say in his defence, but that the natives had enticed him away. As it appeared, that he had remained upon his post till within a few minutes of the time when he was to have been relieved, the punishment inflicted upon him was not severe.

About a fortnight after our arrival at Ulietea, Omai sent two of his people in a canoe; who brought the satisfactory intelligence, that he remained undisturbed by the people of the island, and that every thing went well with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. He accompanied this intelligence, with a request, that the Captain would send him another goat, and two axes. Being happy to have this additional opportunity of serving him,

him
with
were
W
scrub
same
off th
whic
from
missi
view
copp
O
midst
very,
in a c
at th
know
it fee
gone
in qu
marin
in th
were
were
being
got t
island
Cook
turne
recou
nativ
So
and
three
duce
A
was
and
seem
into
the

him, the messengers were sent to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and two kids, male and female, which were spared for him out of the Discovery.

While they lay moored to the shore, they heeled, and scrubbed both sides of the bottoms of the ships, and at the same time fixed some tin plates under the binds; first taking off the old sheathing, and putting in a piece unfilled, over which the plates were nailed. These plates were had from the ingenious Mr. Pelham, Secretary to the Commissioners for Victualling his Majesty's Navy; with a view of trying whether tin would answer the same end as copper, on the bottom of ships.

On the 24th in the morning, it was discovered that a midshipman and a seaman, both belonging to the Discovery, were missing: the natives said that they went away in a canoe the preceding evening, and were, at this time, at the other end of the island. As the midshipman was known to have expressed a desire to remain at these islands, it seemed pretty certain, that he and his companion had gone off with this intention; and Captain Clerke set out in quest of them with two armed boats and a party of marines. His expedition proved fruitless; for he returned in the evening without any certain intelligence where they were. The next morning he was told that the run-aways were at Otaha. Here he went with two armed boats, being accompanied by the Chief himself. But when they got to the place, they were told that they had quitted this island, and gone over to Bolabola the day before. Captain Cook did not think proper to follow them thither, but returned to the ship; fully determined, however, to have recourse to a measure which, he guessed, would oblige the natives to bring them back.

Soon after day-break, the Chief, his son, daughter, and son-in-law, came on board the Resolution. The three last he detained till the two deserters should be produced.

An explanation of the motives upon which this step was taken, and which they found means to make Oreo and his people, who were present, fully comprehend, seemed to recover them from that general consternation into which they were at first thrown. However, many of the natives expressed great sorrow, and went under the

Discovery's stern in canoes, to bewail their captivity, which they did with long and loud exclamations. *Poodoob!* for so the Chief's daughter was called, resounded from every quarter; and the women seemed to vie with each other in mourning her fate.

Oreo himself did not give way to unavailing lamentations, but instantly began his exertions to recover the deserters, by dispatching a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, the sovereign of that island, acquainting him with what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two fugitives, and send them back. The messenger, who was no less a man than the father of Pootoe, came to the Captain for instructions before he set out, by whom he was strictly enjoined not to return without the deserters; and to tell Opoony, from him, that, if they had left Bolabola, he must send canoes to bring them back; for he suspected that they would not long remain in one place.

The consequence, however, of the prisoners was so great, that it hurried them to meditate an attempt which might have involved them in still greater distress, had it not been fortunately prevented. Between five and six o'clock in the evening, all their canoes, in and about the harbour, began to move off, as if some sudden panic had seized them. The Captain was ashore, abreast of the ship at the time, and enquired, in vain, to find out the cause, till the people of the Discovery told him, that a party of the natives had seized Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, who had walked out a little way from the ships. Struck with the boldness of this plan of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him so effectually in his own way, there was no time to deliberate. He instantly ordered the people to arm; and in less than five minutes a strong party, under the command of Mr. King, was sent to rescue the two gentlemen. At the same time two armed boats, and a party under Mr. Williamson, went after the flying canoes, to cut off their retreat to the shore. These several detachments were hardly out of sight, before an account arrived that he had been misinformed; upon which he sent, and called them all in.

It was evident, however, from several corroborating circumstances, that the design of seizing Captain Clerke had

had re
they r
their
hold
bathe
went
to go
seize h
him.
it prud
had ca
far fro
Chief
the ba
could
his pe
him.
of thei
seized
disapp
more
that th
misch
quet v
To the
their
native
and, c
perfed
The
by a
Huahe
that t
to acq
who v
threat
island
was co

§ P
walkin
circumsta
Journal

had really been in agitation amongst the natives. Nay, they made no secret in speaking of it the next day. But their first and great plan of operations was to have laid hold of Captain Cook. It was customary with him to bathe every evening in the fresh water: very often he went alone; and always without arms. Expecting him to go, as usual, this evening, they had determined to seize him and Captain Clerke too, if he had accompanied him. But he had, after confining Oreo's family, thought it prudent to avoid putting himself in their power; and had cautioned Captain Clerke, and the officers, not to go far from the ships. In the course of the afternoon, the Chief asked, three several times, if he would not go to the bathing-place; and when he found, at last, that he could not be prevailed upon, he went off, with the rest of his people, in spite of all that he could do or say to stop him. But as the Captain had no suspicion, at this time, of their design, he imagined that some sudden fright had seized them, which would, as usual, soon be over. Being disappointed, as to him, they fixed on those who were more in their power. It was fortunate for all parties, that they did not succeed; and not less fortunate, that no mischief was done on the occasion. For not a musquet was fired, except two or three, to stop the canoes. To that firing, perhaps, Messrs. Clerke and Gore owed their safety; for, at that very instant, a party of the natives, armed with clubs, were advancing toward them; and, on hearing the report of the musquets, they dispersed.

The conspiracy, as it may be called, was first discovered by a girl, whom one of the officers had brought from Huaheine. She, overhearing some of the Ulieteans say, that they would seize Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, ran to acquaint the first of their friends she met with. Those who were charged with the execution of the design, threatened to kill her, as soon as the English left the island, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, it was contrived that her friends should come, some days after,

M 3

§ Perhaps they owed their safety, principally, to Captain Clerke's walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. This circumstance is omitted both in Captain Cook's and Mr. Anderson's Journal; but it is here mentioned on the authority of Captain King.

ter, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place of safety, where she might lie concealed, till they should have an opportunity of sending her back to Huaheine.

On the 27th, every thing ashore was carried on board; the moorings of the ships were cast off, and they transported them a little way down the harbour, where they came to an anchor again. Toward the afternoon, the natives began to shake off their fears, gathering round, and on board, the ships, as usual; and the transaction of the day before seemed to be forgotten on both sides.

The following night, the wind blew in hard squalls from South to East, and the cable by which the Resolution was riding, parted, just without the hawse. She had another anchor ready to let go; so that the ship was presently brought up again.

Orea, the Chief, being uneasy, as well as the Captain, that no account had been received from Bolabola, set out on the 29th himself for that island, from whence he soon returned with the two deserters. They had reached Otaha the same night they deserted; but, finding it impossible to get to any of the islands to the Eastward (which was their intention) for want of wind, they had proceeded to Bolabola, and from thence to the small island Toobaee, where they were taken by the father of Pootoe, in consequence of the first message sent to Opoony. As soon as they were on board, the three prisoners were released. Thus ended an affair, which had occasioned much trouble and vexation. The Captain would not have exerted himself so very much, but to prevent others from making the like attempt, and to save the son of a brother officer from being a loss to his country.

On the 7th of December both the ships got out to sea, and steered for Bolabola. Oreo, and six or eight men more, took a passage with them. The sole object in visiting this island, was to get possession of an anchor, which M. Bougainville had lost at Otaheite; it was taken up there, and sent to the Chief of this place as a present. It was wanted to fabricate hatchets, and other iron tools, which had been almost expended in exchange for refreshments, and they now wanted to create a new stock of trading articles.

They

Th
soon
Chie
Havi
lity
give
for h
gauz
other
prese
comp
hoite
Nort
Ho
Ota
ville
fame
to th
got p
niarc
been
left
boar
heite
year
and
whic
visit
W
will
fresh
that
A
ever
thre
It is
they
wil
T
lish
life
on

They landed where the natives directed them; and, soon after, the Captain was introduced to Opoony, the Chief, in the midst of a great concourse of people. Having no time to lose, as soon as the necessary formality of compliments was over, he asked the Chief to give him the anchor, and produced the present prepared for him, consisting of a linen night-gown, a shirt, some gauze handkerchiefs, a looking-glass, some beads, and other toys; and six axes. Upon the receipt of these presents, he ordered it to be delivered. Having thus completed the negotiation, he returned on board, hoisted in the boats, and made sail from the island to the North.

How high the Bolabola men are now in estimation at Otaheite, may be inferred from Monsieur de Bougainville's anchor having been conveyed to them. To the same cause must be ascribed the intention of transporting to their island the Spanish bull. And they had already got possession of a ram, brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. The Captain carried ashore a ewe, which had been brought from the Cape of Good-Hope. He also left at Ulietea, under the care of Oreo, an English boar and sow, and two goats. So that, not only Otaheite, but all the neighbouring islands, will, in a few years, have their race of hogs considerably improved; and probably be stocked with all the valuable animals which have been transported hither by their European visitors.

When once this comes to pass, no part of the world will equal these islands, in variety and abundance of refreshments for navigators. There are no places known that excel them in this respect now.

At Otaheite, they expect the return of the Spaniards every day; and they will look for the English, two or three years hence, not only there, but at the other islands. It is to no purpose to tell them, that you will not return; they think you must; though not one of them knows, or will give himself the trouble to inquire, the reason.

Too much seems to have been already known, and published in former relations, about some of the modes of life, that made Otaheite so agreeable an abode to many on board the ships. There are, however, many parts

of the domestic, political, and religious institutions of these people, which are but imperfectly understood.

Perhaps there is scarcely a spot in the universe that affords a more luxuriant prospect than the South East part of Otaheite. The hills are high and steep; but they are covered to the very summits with trees and shrubs. The flat land which bounds those hills toward the sea, and the interjacent valleys also, teem with various productions that grow with the most exuberant vigour. Rivulets are also found in every valley.

The cloth plant, which is raised by seeds brought from the mountains, and the *ava*, or intoxicating pepper, are almost the only things to which they seem to pay any attention. The bread fruit tree grows spontaneously.

Their chief trees beside are the cocoa-nut and the plantain; the latter only requires attention: in three months after it is planted it begins to bear.

Curiosities of any kind are not numerous. Amongst these we may reckon a pond or lake of fresh water, at the top of one of the highest mountains, to go to, and to return from which, takes three or four days. Its eels are of an enormous size. This is esteemed one of the greatest natural curiosities in the country.

The muscular appearance, so common amongst the Friendly Islanders, and which seems a consequence of their being accustomed to much action, is lost here; where the superior fertility of their country enables the inhabitants to lead a more indolent life.

Personal endowments being in great esteem amongst them, they have recourse to several methods of improving them, according to their notions of beauty. This is done by remaining a month or two in the house; during which time they wear a great quantity of clothes, and eat nothing but bread-fruit, to which they ascribe a remarkable property in whitening them.

Their common diet is made up of, at least, nine-tenths of vegetable food; and it is, perhaps, owing to this temperate course of life that they have so few diseases among them. They only reckon five or six, which might be called chronic, or national disorders. The English have unfortunately added one, unknown before, which abundantly supplies the place of all the others; and is now almost

almost u
remedy.

Their
great op
deed, h
nishing
they tor
ing out
another
and last
only ha
said, he
der the
was pass
brow.

does not

Their
and the
answer
ther ar
by part
seem to
success

Their
credite
quite u
emetic

Of
time,
it is e
for the
alone,
Chiefs
or mor
for, w
causes,
and th
for sev

§ M
Accord
of the
the fan

almost universal. For this they seem to have no effectual remedy.

Their behaviour, on all occasions, seems to indicate a great openness and generosity of disposition. Omai, indeed, has often said, that they are sometimes cruel in punishing their enemies. According to his representation, they torment them very deliberately; at one time, tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts; at another, taking out the eyes; then cutting off the nose; and lastly, killing them by opening the belly. But this only happens on particular occasions. Mr. Anderson said, he never saw them, in any misfortune, labour under the appearance of anxiety, after the critical moment was past. Neither does care ever seem to wrinkle their brow. On the contrary, even the approach of death does not appear to alter their usual vivacity.

Their amusements all tend to excite amorous passions; and their songs, of which they are immoderately fond, answer the same purpose. They delight in music; neither are they strangers to the soothing effects produced by particular sorts of motion; which, in some cases, seem to allay any perturbation of mind, with as much success as music.

Their arts are few and simple; yet, if they may be credited, they perform cures in surgery, and are not quite unacquainted with physic; they seem to have no emetics.

Of animal food, a very small portion falls, at any time, to the share of the lower class of people; and then it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions; for they seldom or ever eat pork. The *Eree de boi* § alone, is able to furnish pork every day; and inferior Chiefs, according to their riches, once a week, fortnight or month. Sometimes, they are not even allowed that; for, when the island is impoverished by war, or other causes, the Chief prohibits his subject to kill any hogs; and this prohibition, we are told, is in force, sometimes, for several months, or even for a year or two. During that

§ Mr. Anderson invariably, in his manuscript, writes *Eree de boi*. According to Captain Cook's mode, it is *Eree rabie*. This is one of the numerous instances that perpetually occur, of representing the same word differentl.

that restraint the hogs multiply so fast, that there are instances of their changing their domestic state, and turning wild. A similar prohibition is also sometimes extended to fowls.

It is also amongst the better sort, that the *ava* is chiefly used. But this beverage is prepared somewhat differently from that which was seen so much at the Friendly Islands; for they pour a very small quantity of water upon the root here; and sometimes roast or bake, and bruise the stalks, without chewing it previously to its infusion. But its pernicious effects are very obvious; perhaps, owing to the manner of preparing it; as we often saw instances of its intoxicating, or rather stupifying powers. As an excuse for a practice so destructive, they alledge, that it is adopted to prevent their growing too fat; but it evidently enervates them, and, in all probability, shortens their days.

The women have not only the mortification of being obliged to eat by themselves, and in a different part of the house from the men, but, by a strange kind of policy, are excluded from a share of most of the better sorts of food. The women, generally, serve up their own victuals; for they would certainly starve, before any grown man would do them such an office.

If a young man and woman, from mutual choice, cohabit, the man gives the father of the girl such things as are in common life; as hogs, cloth, or canoes, in proportion to the time they are together; and if he thinks that he has not been sufficiently paid for his daughter, he makes no scruple of forcing her to leave her friend, and to cohabit with another person who may be more liberal. The man, on his part, is always at liberty to make a new choice; but, should his consort become pregnant, he may kill the child; and, after that, either continue his connexion with the mother, or leave her; but if he should adopt the child, and suffer it to live, the parties are then considered as in the married state, and they commonly live together ever after.

The women are often treated with a degree of harshness, or rather brutality, which one would scarcely suppose a man would bestow on an object for whom he

had

had the
mon tha

Cuttin
amongst
there a
neighbou
boua, or
goes wit
one of t
neath th
thing he
young m
the skin
at one ft
the divid
ceeds to

At the
being ta
end of fi
but a thi
ing, the
and a fir

Taboua
squeezes
then retr
their bo

They
mortal.

lips duri
and mix
Deity.

which i
ception
night.

after de
eat indi

trine, i
some mo
eternal

The
jects; b
belongi

had the least affection. Nothing, however, is more common than to see the men beat them without mercy.

Cutting or inciding the fore-skin is a practice adopted amongst them, from a notion of cleanliness. When there are five or six lads pretty well grown up in a neighbourhood, the father of one of them goes to a *Taboua*, or man of knowledge, and lets him know. He goes with the lads to the top of the hills, and, seating one of them properly, introduces a piece of wood underneath the foreskin, and desires him to look aside at something he pretends is coming. Having thus engaged the young man's attention to another object, he cuts through the skin upon the wood, with a shark's tooth, generally at one stroke. He then separates, or rather turns back, the divided parts; and, having put on a bandage, proceeds to perform the same operation on the other lads. At the end of five days they bathe, and the bandages being taken off, the matter is cleaned away. At the end of five days more they bathe again, and are well; but a thickness of the prepuce, where it was cut, remaining, they go again to the mountains with the *Taboua*; and a fire being prepared, and some stones heated, the *Taboua* puts the prepuce between two of them, and squeezes it gently, which removes the thickness. They then return home, having their heads, and other parts of their bodies, adorned with odoriferous flowers.

They believe the soul to be both immaterial and immortal. They say, that it keeps fluttering about the lips during the pangs of death; and that it then ascends, and mixes with, or, as they express it, is eaten by the Deity. In this state it remains for some time; after which it departs to a certain place destined for the reception of the souls of men, where it exists in eternal night. They have no idea of any permanent punishment after death; for the souls of good and of bad men are eat indiscriminately by God. According to their doctrine, if a man restrain from all connexion with women some months before death, he passes immediately into his eternal mansion.

The King never enters the house of any of his subjects; but has, in every district, where he visits, houses belonging to himself; and if, at any time, he should
be

be obliged by accident to deviate from this rule, the house thus honoured with his presence, and every part of the furniture, is burnt.

The ranks of people, besides the *Eree de boi*, or King and his family, are the *Erees*, or powerful Chiefs; the *Manabeone*, or vassals; and the *Tou*, or *Toutou*, servants, or rather slaves. The men of each of these, according to the regular institution, form their connexions with women of their respective ranks; but if with any inferior one, which frequently happens, and a child be born, it is preserved, and has the rank of the father, unless it happens to be an *Eree*, in which case it is killed. If a woman of condition should chuse an inferior person to officiate as an husband, the children he has by her are killed. And if a *Tou* be caught in an intrigue with a woman of the blood-royal, he is put to death. The son of the *Eree de boi* succeeds his father in title and honours, as soon as he is born; but if he should have no children, the brother assumes the government at his death.

Crimes are in general left to the sufferer, to punish as he pleases. If any one be caught stealing, the proprietor of the goods may put the thief instantly to death. But so severe a punishment is seldom inflicted, unless the articles that are stolen be reckoned very valuable; such as breast-plates, and plaited hair. For small thefts, a slight beating only is inflicted. If a person kill another in a quarrel, the friends of the deceased assemble, and engage the survivor and his adherents. If they conquer, they take possession of the house, lands, and goods of the other party; but, if conquered, the reverse takes place. We need not wonder that the killing of a man should be considered as so trifling an offence, amongst a people who do not consider it as any crime at all to murder their own children. When talking to them about such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking whether the Chiefs or principal people were not angry, and did not punish them? Mr. Anderson received this answer, "The Chief neither could nor would interfere in such cases; and that every one had a right to do with his own child what he pleased."

Seventeen months had now elapsed since they had sailed from England. With regard to the principal object of their

their in
ginning
to their
they ha
ries, a
made,

In t
the lin

On
land w
East.

of thos
a narro
cocoa-
genera

The
the nex
ship, to
at the

he sho

warc

... su

On
ordere

part,
Cook v

tain C
these t

King
did no

Clerke
severa

In
under

East p
Clerke

In
party

to the
were

disagr
back

their instructions, their voyage was at this time only beginning, and therefore every thing that might contribute to their success was now to be thought of. As soon as they had got beyond the extent of their former discoveries, a survey of all the stores that were in the ships was made, in order to use them to the best advantage.

In the night, between the 22d and 23d, they crossed the line.

On the 24th, about half an hour after day-break, land was discovered bearing North East by East, half East. Upon a nearer approach, it was found to be one of those low islands so common in this ocean; that is, a narrow bank of land inclosing the sea within. A few cocoa-nut trees were seen in two or three places; but in general the land had a very barren appearance.

They found soundings here, and anchored. At day-break the next morning, they sent two boats, one from each ship, to search more accurately for a landing-place; and, at the same time, two others, to fish at a grapping near the shore. These last returned about eight o'clock, with a load of two hundred weight of fish. Encouraged by this success, they were dispatched again after breakfast.

On the 26th, in the morning, Captain Clerke was ordered to send a boat, with an officer, to the South East part, to look for turtle; and Mr. King and Captain Cook went each in a boat to the North East part. Captain Cook saw five turtles close to the shore. One of these they caught, and the rest made their escape. Mr. King soon after returned without any; however, they did not despair of getting a supply; for some of Captain Clerke's officers had been more fortunate, and caught several there.

In the morning of the 27th, the pinnace and cutter, under the command of Mr. King, were sent to the South East part of the island; they, and a party of Captain Clerke's people, brought upwards of fifty.

In the afternoon of the 30th, the boats and turtle party all returned on board, except a seaman belonging to the Discovery, who had been missing two days. There were two of them at first who had lost their way; but disagreeing about the most probable track to bring them back to their companions, they had separated; and one

of them joined the party, after having been absent twenty-four hours, and been in great distress.

The land over which they had to travel was not more than three miles across; nor was there any thing to obstruct their view; for the country was a flat, with a few shrubs scattered upon it; and, from many parts of it, the masts of the ships could easily be seen. But considering how strange a set of beings the generality of seamen are, when on shore, instead of being surpris'd that these two men should thus lose their way; it is rather to be wonder'd at, that no more of the party were missing.

As soon as Captain Clerke knew that one of the stragglers was still in this awkward situation, he sent a party in search of him, who returned with their lost companion. This poor fellow must have suffer'd far greater distress than the other straggler; not only as having been lost a longer time, but as he was too squeamish to drink turtle's blood; which the other did, as there was no water in the island.

Having some cocoa-nuts and yams on board, in a state of vegetation, Captain Cook order'd them to be plant'd here; he also left on the little island, a bottle containing this inscription:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

Navis { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
 { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

They got at this island, to both ships, about three hundred turtle, weighing, one with another, about ninety or a hundred pounds. These were all of the green kind, and perhaps as good as any in the world. They also caught, with hook and line, as much fish as they could consume during their stay. These consist'd principally of cavallies, of different sizes; large and small snappers; and a few of two sorts of rock fish.

There were not the smallest traces of any human being having ever been here before them.

As they kept Christmas here, Captain Cook call'd this discovery Christmas Island.

On the 2d of January, 1778, at day-break, they weigh'd anchor, and resum'd their course to the North.

On

On the 19th, at sun-rise, they saw land. At this time they were in doubt whether or no the land there was inhabited; but this doubt was soon cleared up by seeing some canoes coming off from the shore toward the ships. They had from three to six men each; and, on their approach, the Captain was agreeably surpris'd to find, that they spoke the language of Otaheite, and of the other islands lately visited. It required but very little address to get them to come along-side; but no intreaties could prevail upon any of them to come on board. Some brass medals were tied to a rope, and given to them, who in return, tied some small mackarel to the rope, as an equivalent. This was repeated; and some small nails, or bits of iron, which they valued more than any other article, were given them. They seem'd very mild; and had no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had evidently brought for their own defence; and these they threw overboard when they found they were not wanted.

Seeing no signs of an anchoring-place at this Eastern extreme of the island, they bore away to leeward, and ranged along the South East side, at the distance of half a league from the shore. Some came off, as the ships proceeded along the coast, bringing with them roasting-pigs, and some very fine potatoes, which they had exchanged, as the others had done, for whatever was offer'd to them. Several small pigs were purchased for a six-penny nail; so that they found themselves again in a land of plenty, and just at the time when the turtle, which they had so fortunately procur'd at Christmas Island, were nearly exhausted.

Next morning several of the natives took courage and came on board.

In the course of several voyages Capt. Cook never before met with the natives of any place so much astonish'd, as these people were, upon entering a ship. Their eyes were continually flying from object to object; the wildness of their looks and gestures fully expressing their entire ignorance about every thing they saw, and strongly marking that, till now, they had never been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of their commodities, except iron; which, however, it was plain, they had only

heard of, or had known it in some small quantity, brought to them at some distant period. They seemed only to understand, that it was a substance, much better adapted to the purposes of cutting, or of boring holes, than any thing their own country produced. They asked for it by the name of *hamaite*, probably referring to some instrument, in the making of which iron could be usefully employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument; nor could they at all handle it properly. For the same reason, they frequently called iron by the name of *toe*, which, in their language, signifies a hatchet, or rather a kind of adze. On being asked what iron was, they immediately answered, "We do not know; you know what it is, and we only understand it as *toe*, or *hamaite*." When they were shewn some beads, they asked first, "What they were; and then, whether they should eat them." But on their being told that they were to be hung in their ears, they returned them as useless. They were equally indifferent as to a looking-glass, which was offered them, and returned it for the same reason; but sufficiently expressed their desire for *hamaite* and *toe*, which they wished might be very large. Plates of earthen-ware, china-cups, and other such things, were so new to them, that they asked if they were made of wood; but wished to have some, that they might carry them to be looked at on shore. They were, in some respects, naturally well bred; or, at least, fearful of giving offence, asking where they should sit down, whether they might spit upon the deck, and the like. At first, on their entering the ship, they endeavoured to steal every thing they came near; or rather to take it openly, as if they would not be prevented: however, they were soon convinced of their error; and if they, after some time, became less active in appropriating to themselves whatever they took a fancy to, it was because they found there was a watchful eye over them.

Just as three boats, armed, were ordered to go on shore in search of fresh water, one of the natives stole a butcher's cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened to the shore, the boats pursuing him in vain.

To prevent the communication of a certain disease, Captain Cook ordered all the female visitors to be excluded

cluded from
the canoe
differ from
countenances
were features
faces, or
tion was
known to
be sent

About
ed, that
lages, v
that he
opposed
great nu
quets, a
of; and
to fire,
circumf
left the
if nothi

Between
three ar
water,
veral hu
near the
water.

The
of the r
in that
prevail
many
proffere
sents as
ness wa
and go
which
for thei
called
than th
self abo
able di

cluded from the ships. Many of them had come off in the canoes. Their size, colour, and features, did not differ much from those of the men; and though their countenances were remarkably open and agreeable, there were few traces of delicacy to be seen, either in their faces, or other proportions. Another necessary precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person, known to be capable of propagating the infection, should be sent upon duty out of the ships.

About noon, Mr. Williamson came back, and reported, that he had seen a large pond, near one of the villages, which contained fresh water. He also reported, that he had attempted to land in another place, but was opposed by the natives, who, coming down to the boats in great numbers, endeavoured to take away the oars, muskets, and, in short, every thing that they could lay hold of; and pressed so thick upon him, that he was obliged to fire, by which one man was killed. But this unhappy circumstance the Captain did not know till after he had left the island; so that all his measures were directed as if nothing of the kind had happened.

Between three and four o'clock, he went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve marines, to examine the water, and to try the disposition of the inhabitants, several hundreds of whom were assembled on a sandy beach near the village; at the back of which was the piece of water.

The very instant he leaped on shore, the collected body of the natives all fell flat upon their faces, and remained in that very humble posture, till, by expressive signs, he prevailed upon them to rise. They then brought a great many small pigs; he expressed his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by giving them, in return, such presents as he had brought. When this introductory business was finished, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and got some of the natives to conduct him to the water, which proved to be very good, and in a proper situation for their purpose. It was so considerable, that it may be called a lake; and it extended farther up the country than they could see. The Captain having satisfied himself about this very essential point, and about the peaceable disposition of the natives, he returned on board; and

then gave orders that every thing should be in readiness for landing, and filling the water-casks in the morning.

They met with no obstruction in watering; on the contrary, the natives assisted the men in rolling the casks to and from the pool. Captain Cook, Mr. Webber, and Mr. Anderson, then made an excursion up the country; every person they met fell prostrate upon the ground, and remained in that position till they had passed. Their Chiefs are accustomed to the same kind of homage.

In this short excursion nothing was seen worthy of notice; upon their return to the beach, they found a great crowd assembled, and a brisk trade for pigs, fowls, and roots, going on there, with the greatest order.

Amongst the articles which they brought to barter, they could not help taking notice of a particular sort of cloak and cap. The first are nearly of the size and shape of the short cloaks worn by the women in England. The ground of them is a net-work, upon which the most beautiful red and yellow feathers are so closely fixed, that the surface might be compared to the thickest and richest velvet, which they resemble, both as to the feel and the glossy appearance.

The cap is made almost exactly like a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, sometimes of a hand's breadth; and it fits very close upon the head, having notches to admit the ears. It is a frame of twigs and osiers, covered with a net-work, into which are wrought feathers, in the same manner as upon the cloaks, though rather closer, and less diversified. These, probably, complete the dress, with the cloaks; for the natives, sometimes, appeared in both together.

The Captain was at a loss to guess from whence they could get such a quantity of these beautiful feathers; but he was soon informed; for they afterwards brought great numbers of skins of small red birds for sale, which were often tied up in bunches of twenty or more, or had a small wooden skewer run through their nostrils.

One of the natives was observed to have a small parcel pendant to a string, which looked like human flesh. The question being put to him, he answered, that it was part of a man. Another of his countrymen, who stood by him, was then asked, whether it was their custom to eat those

those
the aff

At
spring
the sh
nearer
eleven
covery
turnec
Disco

The
leewa
could
at anc
rents
Oneel
to the
got th
it.

Six
bring
yams
Atooi
use o
hama
ties f
came
and
fired
them
with

On
South
land
enco
pinn
boar
melo
bene
some
seem
and

those killed in battle? and he immediately answered in the affirmative.

At seven o'clock, the next morning, a breeze of wind springing up at North-east, they set sail in order to clear the shore; they then steered for Oneeheow, to take a nearer view of it, and to anchor there if convenient: at eleven o'clock they were within two leagues; but the Discovery not appearing, they dropped their design, and returned to Atooi; and, soon after, they were joined by the Discovery.

They fetched in with the land about two leagues to leeward of the road, which, though so near, they never could recover; for what they gained at one time, they lost at another: so that, by the morning of the 29th, the currents had carried them Westward, within three leagues of Oneeheow. Some of the islanders, who had come off to the ships, informing them that fresh water might be got there, they ran down, and came to an anchor before it.

Six or seven canoes had come off, before they anchored, bringing some small pigs and potatoes, and a good many yams and mats. The people in them resembled those of Atooi; and seemed to be equally well acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for also by the names of *hamaite* and *toe*; parting readily with all their commodities for pieces of this precious metal. Many of them came readily on-board, crouching down upon the deck, and not quitting that humble posture, till they were desired to get up. They had brought several females with them, who remained along-side in the canoes, behaving with far less modesty than their countrywomen of Atooi.

On the 31st, the master was sent in a boat up to the South-east head, or point of the island, to try if he could land under it. He returned with a favourable report; encouraged by this, Captain Cook went on shore in the pinnace, taking with him a ram-goat and two ewes, a boar and sow-pig of the English breed; and the seeds of melons, pumpkins, and onions: being very desirous of benefiting these poor people, by furnishing them with some additional articles of food. To one of them, who seemed to assume some command, he gave the goats, pigs, and seeds he intended to have left them at Atooi, as is just related.

related. There did not appear to be above five hundred people upon the island. Some mysterious ceremonies were observed; one of which was performed by a woman, who took a small pig, and threw it into the surf, till it was drowned, and then tied up a bundle of wood, which she also disposed of in the same manner. The same woman, at another time, beat with a stick upon a man's shoulders, who sat down for that purpose. A particular veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they have very tame; and it was observed to be a pretty general practice, amongst them, to pull out one of their teeth §.

On Monday, the 2d of February, they stood away to the Northward, in prosecution of their voyage. This island supplied both ships with a considerable quantity of provisions, particularly vegetables.

Though this place is destitute of the delightful views of Otaheite, its possessing a greater quantity of gently-rising land, renders it, in some measure, superior, because it is more capable of improvement.

The vale, or moist ground, produces *taro*, of a much larger size than any they had ever seen; and the higher ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that often weigh ten, and sometimes twelve or fourteen pounds; very few being under two or three.

Besides the vegetable articles, bought as refreshments, amongst which were, at least, five or six varieties of plants, the island produces bread-fruit; though it seems to be scarce, as they saw only one tree, which was large, and had some fruit upon it.

The scarlet birds, which were brought for sale, were never met with alive; but they saw a single small one, about the size of a canary-bird, of a deep crimson colour; a large owl; two large brown hawks, or kites; and a wild duck; and it is probable there are a great many sorts, judging by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and very small, velvet-like, black feathers, used upon the cloaks, and other ornaments, worn by the inhabitants.

The

§ It is very remarkable, that, in this custom, which one would think is so unnatural, as not to be adopted by two different tribes, originally unconnected, the people of this island, and Dampier's natives on the West side of New Holland, at such an immense distance, should be found to agree.

The
Their
times
that
cast
brown.
being
a
tion.

They
upon
the
smimm
very
co
when
the
car
their
li
looked

It
w
the
wo
men
le
fici
entl
who
est
than
de

The
They
v
sexes,

The
partic
their
h

The
are
lar
and
t
mere
whic
larit
or
sid
rather
in
no
witho
dogs,
seem

A
about

The inhabitants are of a middling stature, firmly made. Their visage, especially amongst the women, is sometimes round; but others have it long; nor can it be said, that they are distinguished, as a nation, by any general cast of countenance. Their colour is nearly of a nut-brown. The women have been already mentioned, as being a little more delicate than the men, in their formation.

They are very expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most trifling occasion; diving under them; and swimming to others, though at a great distance. It was very common to see women, with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high that they could not land in the canoes, leap overboard, and, without endangering their little ones, swim to the shore, through a sea that looked dreadful.

It was a pleasure to observe with how much affection the women managed their infants, and how readily the men lent their assistance to such a tender office; thus sufficiently distinguishing themselves from those savages, who esteem a wife and a child as things rather necessary, than desirable, or worthy of their notice.

The children, when very young, go quite naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair, in both sexes, is cut in different forms.

The men are frequently punctured, though not in any particular part; sometimes there are a few marks upon their hands, or arms, and near the groin.

Their houses are about, without any order. Some are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet long, and twenty or thirty broad, while others of them are mere hovels. They are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles, disposed with some regularity. The entrance is made indifferently in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, so low, that one must rather creep than walk in. Of animal food they can be in no want, as they have abundance of hogs, which run, without restraint, about the houses; and if they eat dogs, which is not improbable, their stock of these seemed to be very considerable.

A great number of small polished rods were observed, about four or five feet long, somewhat thicker than the ram-
mer

mer of a musquet, with a tuft of long, white dog's hair fixed on the small end. These are, probably, used in their diversions. They play at bowls with pieces of about a pound weight, shaped somewhat like a small cheese, but rounded at the sides and edges, which are very nicely polished.

In every thing manufactured by these people, there appears to be an uncommon degree of neatness and ingenuity. Their cloth is stained of a variety of colours: one would suppose that they had borrowed their patterns from some mercer's shop, in which the most elegant productions of China and Europe are collected. In what manner they produce their colours, there were no opportunities of learning.

They fabricate a great many white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side; and often pretty large. But they make others coarser, plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon.

They stain their gourd-shells prettily with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour; instances of which we saw practised at New Zealand. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their *kava*, are of the *etooa*-tree, or *cordia*, as neat as if made in a turning-lathe, and perhaps better polished. Their fishing-hooks are generally made of pea shell; they are elegantly formed and beautifully polished also.

After Captain Cook had left the island, one of the Chiefs made his appearance, and paid a visit to Captain Clerke on board the *Discovery*. He came off in a double canoe; and, like the king of the Friendly Islands, paid no regard to the small canoes that happened to lie in his way, but ran against, or over them. His attendants helped him into the ship, and placed him on the gang-way. Their care of him did not cease then; for they stood round him, holding each other by the hands; nor would they suffer any one to come near him but Captain Clerke himself. He was a young man, clothed from head to foot, and accompanied by a young woman, supposed to be his wife. His name was said to be *Tamahano*. Captain Clerke made him some suitable presents; and received from him, in return, a large bowl, supported by

by two
to the d
skill.

In the
mode of
the who
same aff
sure and
somewh

On t
ward.

This en
course t
and sto

On
they we
to the l
the roc
voyage
ships g
wood a
the co
they m
hithert
within

Dur
some p
and fo
the m
or me
smaller
were v
and pu
they a
at rest
about,
sides,
most p
spect t

On
whale

by two figures of men, the carving of which, both as to the design and the execution, shewed some degree of skill.

In their language they have not only adopted the soft mode of the Otaheiteans, in avoiding harsh sounds, but the whole idiom of their language; using not only the same affixes and suffixes to their words, but the same measure and cadence in their songs; though in a manner somewhat less agreeable.

On the 2d of February they stood away to the northward. On the 7th the wind veered to the South East. This enabled them to steer North East and East, which course they continued till the 12th. They then tacked, and stood to the Northward.

On the 19th the wind veered to the South East, and they were then enabled again to steer to the East, inclining to the North. On the 25th, they began to meet with the rock-weed, mentioned by the writer of Lord Anson's voyage, under the name of sea-leek; which the Manilla ships generally fall in with. Now and then, a piece of wood also appeared. But, if they had not known that the continent of North America was not far distant, they might, from the few signs of the vicinity of land hitherto met with, have concluded, that there was none within some thousand leagues of them.

During the calm, on the morning of the 2d of March, some parts of the sea seemed covered with a kind of slime; and some small sea animals were swimming about; the most conspicuous of which were of the gelatinous, or *medusa* kind, almost globular; and another sort smaller, that had a white, or shining appearance, and were very numerous. Some of these last were taken up, and put into a glass cup, with some salt water, in which they appeared like small scales, or bits of silver, when at rest, in a prone situation. When they began to swim about, which they did, with equal ease, upon their back, sides, or belly, they emitted the brightest colours of the most precious gems, according to their position with respect to the light.

On the 6th at noon, they saw two seals, and several whales; and at day-break, the next morning, the long-looked

looked for coast of New Albion* was seen, extending from North East to South East, distant ten or twelve leagues.

From Saturday, March the 7th to the 20th, they stretched along the west coast of North America, combating contrary winds.

On the 29th they anchored in an inlet in eighty-five fathoms water, so near the shore as to reach it with an hawser.

They no sooner drew near the inlet, than they found the coast to be inhabited; three canoes came off to the ship. In one of these were two men, in another six, and in the third ten. Having come pretty near the ships, a person in the last stood up, and made a long harangue, inviting them to land, as they supposed, by his gestures. At the same time, he kept strewing handfuls of feathers towards them; § and some of his companions threw handfuls of red dust or powder in the same manner. The person who played the orator, wore the skin of some animal, and held, in each hand, something which rattled as he kept shaking it. After tiring himself with his repeated exhortations, of which the ships company did not understand a word, he was quiet. One canoe was remarkable for a singular head, which had a bird's eye and bill, of an enormous size, painted on it; and a person who was in it, who seemed to be a Chief, was no less remarkable for his uncommon appearance; having many feathers hanging from his head, and being painted in an extraordinary manner. He held in his hands a carved bird of wood, as large as a pigeon, with which he rattled as the person first-mentioned had done; and was no less vociferous in his harangue, which was attended with some expressive gestures.

They behaved very peaceably, but none of them could be prevailed upon to venture on board. They shewed great readiness, however, to part with any thing they

* This part of the West side of North America, was so named by Sir Francis Drake.

§ The natives of this coast, twelve degrees farther South, also brought feathers as presents to Sir Francis Drake on his arrival. See an account of his voyage in Campbell's edition of Harris, Vol. i. p. 18.

they
chang
other
follow
of ab
Resol
Th
groun
able f
forget
cessio

they had, and took whatever was offered them in exchange; but were more desirous of iron, than of any other of their articles of commerce. Many of the canoes followed them to their anchoring-place; and a group of about ten or a dozen of them remained alongside the Resolution most part of the night.

These circumstances gave our voyagers a reasonable ground of hope, that they should find this a comfortable station to supply all their wants, and to make them forget the hardships experienced during a constant succession of adverse winds.

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

O P A R T

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

P A R T IV.

Transactions amongst the Natives of North America; Discoveries along that Coast and the Eastern Extremity of Asia, Northward to Icy Cape; and Return Southward to the Sandwich Islands; from March 1778, to January 1779.

THIS place afforded the ships an excellent shelter; on the North West side they put into a snug cove.

A great many canoes, filled with the natives, were about the ships all day; and a trade commenced, which was carried on with the strictest honesty on both sides. The articles which they offered to sale were skins of various animals, such as bears, wolves, foxes, deer, raccoons, polecats, martins; and, in particular, the sea otters, which are found at the islands East of Kamtschatka. Besides the skins in their native shape, they also brought garments made of them, and another sort of clothing made of the bark of a tree, or some plant like hemp; weapons, such as bows, arrows, and spears; fish-hooks, and instruments of various kinds; wooden vizors of many different monstrous figures; a sort of woollen stuff, blanketing; bags filled with red ochre, pieces of carved work, beads, and several other little ornaments of thin brass and iron, shaped like a horse-shoe, which they hang at their noses; and several chissels, or pieces of iron, fixed to handles. From their possessing which metals, it was natural to infer that they had been visited before by some civilized nation, or had connexions with tribes on their continent, who had communication with them. But the most extraordinary of all the articles which they brought to the ships for sale, were human skulls, and hands not yet quite stripped of the flesh, which they made the people on board plainly understand they had eaten; and,

and, in
had been

The f
course o
If they
to have
and mix
They w
rants of
possessing
from the
the insta
weighing
ler ones,
ner. A

every bi
men wer
terous en
would co
a boat, v
the other

The ob
on the sic

A con

On their
gular me
paddle, w
Chief, o
up with a
speaking
the orator
a mask,
some anir
rattle in
this circu
and beg
often, in
all in th
mony.

The ne
and much
many of

and, indeed, some of them had evident marks that they had been upon the fire.

The fame of Captain Cook's arrival brought a great concourse of the natives to the ships in the course of this day. If they had any distrust or fear at first, they now appeared to have laid it aside; for they came on board the ships, and mixed with the sailors with the greatest freedom. They were also as light-fingered as any of the inhabitants of the other islands, and far more dangerous; for, possessing sharp iron instruments, they could cut a hook from the tackle, or any other piece of iron from a rope, the instant that our backs were turned. A large hook, weighing between twenty and thirty pounds, several smaller ones, and other articles of iron, were lost in this manner. And, as to the boats, they stripped them of every bit of iron that was worth carrying away, though men were left in them as a guard. They were dexterous enough in effecting their purposes; for one fellow would contrive to amuse the boat-keeper, at one end of a boat, while another was pulling out the iron work at the other.

The observatory was carried on shore, and tents pitched on the side of a rock near the Resolution.

A considerable number of the natives visited daily. On their first coming, they generally went through a singular mode of introducing themselves. They would paddle, with all their strength, quite round both ships; a Chief, or other principal person in the canoe, standing up with a spear; or some other weapon in his hand, and speaking, or rather hallooing, all the time. Sometimes the orator of the canoe would have his face covered with a mask, representing either a human visage, or that of some animal; and, instead of a weapon, would hold a rattle in his hand, as before described. After making this circuit round the ships, they would come along-side, and begin to trade without further ceremony. Very often, indeed, they would first chant a song, in which all in the canoe joined, with a very pleasing harmony.

The necessary repairs of the ships were very numerous, and much engaged the attention of the people on board: many of the defects were but just discovered. While they

were thus employed, the natives continued to supply them with provisions, particularly with fish. In the evening they were visited by a tribe of natives whom they had never seen before; and who, in general, were better looking people than those just mentioned. Captain Cook prevailed upon these visitors to go down into the cabin. They seemed to look with great indifference upon the objects that surrounded them; some few only seemed to be amused.

The natives evidently traded with more distant tribes; for it was observed, that they would frequently disappear for four or five days at a time, and then return with fresh cargoes of skins and curiosities, which the people on board were so passionately fond of, that they always came to a good market. They also brought a considerable quantity of very good animal oil, which they had reserved in bladders. In this traffic some would attempt to cheat, by mixing water with the oil; and, once or twice, they had the address to carry their imposition so far, as to fill their bladders with mere water, without a single drop of oil. Nothing would go down with them but metal; and brass had, by this time, supplanted iron; being so eagerly sought after, that before they left this place, hardly a bit of it was left in the ships, except what belonged to their necessary instruments. Whole suits of clothes were stripped of every button; bureaus of their furniture; and copper kettles, tin canisters, candlesticks, and the like, all went to wreck.

It was found, by traversing a few miles west, that the land under which the ships lay, was an island; and there were many smaller ones lying scattered in the Sound on the West of it. Opposite the North end of this island, upon the main land, the Captain observed a village, and there he landed. The inhabitants of it were not so polite as those of the other. But this cold reception seemed owing to one surly Chief, who would not let him enter their houses, following him wherever he went; and several times, by expressive signs, marking his impatience that he should be gone. Some of the young women, better pleased than their inhospitable Chief, dressed themselves expeditiously in their best apparel.

apparel,
was far fi

While
visited by
ple under
beyond th
and other
most sing
from ther
posed to
strangers
ment.

Next m
visited by
canoes. C
up, and
which the
in quicker
with the r
ing in con
canoes; a
the end of
and then b
hooc! for
people on
they listene
they came
had to disp

On the
with an in
prevented.
every fore-
the Captai
to sail, or
impatience
termine to

The nat
the Sound;
canoes. T
self to the
with a bras
pletely hap

apparel, and welcomed him, by joining in a song, which was far from disagreeable.

While the Captain was absent, the ships had been visited by some strangers, who, by signs, made his people understand that they had come from the South East, beyond the bay. They brought several skins, garments, and other articles, which they bartered. But what was most singular, two silver table-spoons were purchased from them, which, from their peculiar shape, were supposed to be of Spanish manufacture. One of these strangers wore them round his neck, by way of ornament.

Next morning, about eight o'clock, the ships were visited by a number of natives, in twelve or fourteen canoes. On advancing toward the ships, they all stood up, and began to sing. Some of their songs, in which the whole body joined, were in a slow, and others in quicker time; and they accompanied their notes with the most regular motions of their hands; or beating in concert, with their paddles, on the sides of the canoes; and making other very expressive gestures. At the end of each song, they remained silent a few seconds, and then began again, sometimes pronouncing the word *hoee!* forcibly, as a chorus. After entertaining the people on board with this specimen of their music, which they listened to with admiration, for above half an hour, they came along-side the ships, and bartered what they had to dispose of.

On the 26th every thing was brought from the shore with an intention to put to sea, but wind and tide both prevented. At four o'clock in the afternoon, they had every fore-runner of an approaching storm: this made the Captain hesitate a little, whether he should venture to sail, or wait till the next morning; but his anxious impatience to proceed upon the voyage, made him determine to put to sea at all events.

The natives attended them till they were almost out of the Sound; some on board the ships, and others in their canoes. To one of the Chiefs who had attached himself to the Captain, he presented a new broad-sword, with a brass hilt; the possession of which made him completely happy. It is not to be doubted, that whoever

comes after him to this place, will find the inhabitants prepared with no inconsiderable supply of skins; an article of trade which may be purchased to great advantage.

This place was honoured with the name of King George's Sound; but it is called Nootka by the natives. The depth of water in the middle of the Sound, and even close home to some parts of its shore, is from forty-seven to ninety fathoms, and perhaps more. The harbours, and anchoring places, within its circuit, are numerous.

As the season was advancing very fast, and the necessary repairs took up all their time, excursions of every kind, either on the land, or by water, were never attempted. They must have a great variety of animals, though only a few racoons, martins, and squirrels were seen; as the natives clothe themselves in the skins of bears, foxes, deer, and wolves.

Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not as yet found their way to this place; nor do the natives seem to have any knowledge of the brown rats, to which, when they saw them on board the ships, they applied the name they give to squirrels.

The sea animals seen off the coast, were whales, porpoises, and seals. The last of these seem only of the common sort, judging from the skins which were seen here.

Sea-otters, which live mostly in the water, are found here. The fur of these animals, as mentioned in the Russian accounts, is certainly softer and finer than that of any other animal known by Europeans; and therefore the discovery of this part of the continent of North America, where so valuable an article of commerce may be met with, cannot be a matter of indifference §.

The birds which frequent the waters and the shores, are not more numerous than the others. The quebrantahueffos, gulls, and shags were seen off the coast; and the

¶ § Mr. Coxe, on the authority of Mr. Pallas, says, that the old and middle-aged sea-otters skins are sold, at Kiachta, by the Russians, to the Chinese, from 80 to 100 rubles a skin; that is, from 16l. to 20l. each. See Coxe's *Russian Discoveries*, p. 13.

the tw
comm
flocks
northe
of bir
shy on
pluma
across
Fishes
princi
the com
in leng
chovy,
silver-
hour, w
likewil
have se
The
and fo
long,
with a
The
commo
commo
the fo
rather
with la
and w
brows
of the
and,
lank,
The
their
The
form,
guish
to ren
Th
ornam
and,
over

the two last also frequent the Sound; they are of the common sorts. They saw wild ducks in considerable flocks; and the greater *lumme*, or diver, found in the northern parts of Europe. There are great numbers of birds of different species in the woods, which are very shy on account of the natives destroying them for their plumage. Some swans were seen once or twice flying across the Sound.

Fish are more plentiful in quantity than birds. The principal sorts, which they found in great numbers, are the common herring, but scarcely exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, which is the same with the anchovy, or sardine, though rather larger; a white, or silver-coloured bream, and another of a gold-brown colour, with many narrow longitudinal blue stripes. Sharks, likewise, sometimes frequent the Sound; for the natives have some of their teeth in their possession.

The only animals of the reptile kind observed here, and found in the woods, were brown snakes two feet long, which are harmless; and brownish water-lizards, with a tail exactly like that of an eel.

The persons of the natives are, in general, under the common stature; but not slender in portion, being commonly pretty full or plump, though not muscular: the forehead rather low; the eyes small, black, and rather languishing than sparkling; the mouth round, with large round thickish lips; the teeth tolerably equal and well set, but not remarkably white. Their eyebrows are also scanty, and always narrow: but the hair of the head is in great abundance, very coarse and strong; and, without a single exception, black, straight, and lank, or hanging down over the shoulders.

Their colour could never positively be determined, as their bodies were incrustated with paint and dirt.

The women are nearly of the same size, colour, and form, with the men; from whom it is not easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural delicacies sufficient to render their persons agreeable.

Their common dress is a flaxen garment, or mantle, ornamented on the upper edge by a narrow strip of fur, and, at the lower edge, by fringes or tassels; it is tied over the shoulders. Over this, which reaches below the knees,

Knees, is worn a small cloak of the same substance, likewise fringed at the lower part. In shape this resembles a round dish cover, being quite close, except in the middle, where there is a hole just large enough to admit the head.

Besides the above dress, which is common to both sexes, the men frequently throw over their other garments the skin of a bear, wolf, or sea-otter, with the hair outward, and tie it, as a cloak, near the upper part, wearing it sometimes before, and sometimes behind. Their dress would by no means be inelegant, were it kept clean. But as they rub their bodies constantly over with red paint, of a clayey or coarse ochry substance, mixed with oil, their garments, by this means, contract a rancid offensive smell, and a greasy nastiness; so that they make a very wretched dirty appearance. And, what is still worse, their heads and their garments swarm with vermin, which they were frequently seen to pick off, and eat with great composure.

Sometimes they wear masks, cut in wood, representing human faces, the heads of eagles, and other large birds, the heads of land and sea-animals, such as wolves, deer, porpoises, and others. But, in general, these representations much exceed the natural size; and they are painted, and often strewed with pieces of the foliaceous *mica*, which makes them glitter, and serves to augment their enormous deformity. So fond are they of these disguises, that Captain Cook says he has seen one of them put his head into a tin kettle he had got from the ship, for want of another sort of mask.

Though there is but too much reason, from their bringing to sale human skulls and bones, to infer that they treat their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty, this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character with that of almost every tribe of uncivilized men, in every age, and in every part of the globe, than that they are to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. They seem to be a docile, courteous, good-natured people.

When displeased, they are exceedingly violent; but they are soon pacified. Their curiosity appears, in some measure, to lie dormant; for few expressed any desire

to

to see or which, to have appe ships did

The Ca wolf's skin that anima which he

In traffi sition." B of the obje endeavour it; which childish cu

There a to look-out position; to prevent

Their h compared stalls, and ent famili Close to th boards, ra floor, and sleep. Th long, and between th nor chimn

Their f oblong pa

The na at least e fish within their bone the additi heaps, and becomes t In a word thing, in smoke.

to see or examine things wholly unknown to them ; and which, to those truly possessed of that passion, would have appeared astonishing. Even the magnitude of their ships did not seem to engage their notice.

The Captain says, he once saw one of them dressed in a wolf's skin, with the head over his own, and imitating that animal, by making a squeaking noise with a whistle, which he had in his mouth.

In trafficking, some of them betrayed a knavish disposition. But, in general, it was otherwise. The novelty of the object, with them, was a sufficient motive for their endeavouring, by any indirect means, to get possession of it ; which proved, that they were rather actuated by a childish curiosity, than by a dishonest disposition.

There are holes, or windows, in the sides of the houses, to look-out at, but without any regularity of shape or disposition ; and these have bits of mat hung before them, to prevent the rain getting in.

Their houses, in the inside, may with propriety be compared to a long English stable with a double range of stalls, and a broad passage in the middle ; for the different families are only separated by a piece of plank. Close to the sides, in each of these parts, is a bench of boards, raised five or six inches higher than the rest of the floor, and covered with mats, on which the family sit and sleep. These benches are commonly seven or eight feet long, and four or five broad. In the middle of the floor, between them, is the fire-place, which has neither hearth nor chimney. This part appeared common to them all.

Their furniture consists only of a few chests and boxes, oblong pails and buckets, and a few wooden bowls.

The nastiness and stench of their houses are, however, at least equal to the confusion ; for, as they dry their fish within doors, they also gut them there, which, with their bones and fragments thrown down at meals, and the addition of other sorts of filth, lie every where in heaps, and are, it should seem, never carried away, till it becomes troublesome, from their size, to walk over them. In a word, their houses are as filthy as hog-sties ; every thing, in and about them, stinking of fish, train-oil, and smoke.

Though

Though their food, strictly speaking, may be said to consist of every thing animal or vegetable that they can procure, the quantity of the latter bears an exceeding small proportion to that of the former. Their greatest reliance seems to be upon the sea, as affording fish, muscles, smaller shell-fish, and sea-animals.

Their manner of eating is exactly consonant to the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the troughs and platters, in which they put their food, appear never to have been washed from the time they were first made, and the dirty remains of a former meal are only swept away by the succeeding one; for they eat the roots which they dig from the ground, without so much as shaking off the soil that adheres to them.

Their weapons are bows and arrows, slings, spears, short truncheons of bone, and a small pick-axe, not unlike the common American *tomahawk*. The tomahawk is a stone, six or eight inches long, pointed at one end, and the other end fixed into a handle of wood, which resembles the head and neck of the human figure; and the stone is fixed in the mouth, so as to represent an enormously large tongue.

They gave pretty strong proof that they are often engaged in quarrels, from the number of human skulls which they brought to sell.

Their taste or design in working figures upon their garments, corresponds with their fondness for carving, in every thing they make of wood. Nothing is without a kind of freeze-work, or the figure of some animal upon it; but the most general representation is that of the human face, which is often cut out upon birds, and the other monstrous figures mentioned before; and even upon their stone and bone weapons.

The imitative arts being nearly allied, no wonder that, to their skill in working figures in their garments, and carving them in wood, they should add that of drawing them in colours. Captain Cook says he has seen the whole process of their whale-fishery painted on the caps they wear. This, though rudely executed, serves, at least, to shew, that they have some notion of a method of commemorating and representing actions in a lasting way.

Their

The
pearar
the la
formed
seven
toward
after-p
with a
and lig
of a la
middle
being
dexteri
sails ar
The
with a
do very
skill, w
kind of
occasion
dried h
Thei
The ch
wood.
skin for
Thei
farther
more fo
we do.
and not
by clas
mouth.
composi
nerally
termina
and
put dow

Their canoes are of a simple structure, but, to appearance, well calculated for every useful purpose. Even the largest, which carry twenty people or more, are formed of one tree. Many of them are forty feet long, seven broad, and about three deep. From the middle, toward each end, they become gradually narrower, the after-part, or stern, ending abruptly or perpendicularly, with a small knob on the top. Their paddles are small and light; the shape, in some measure, resembling that of a large leaf, pointed at the bottom, broadest in the middle, and gradually losing itself in the shaft, the whole being about five feet long. They have acquired great dexterity in managing these paddles, by constant use; for sails are no part of their art of navigation.

They sometimes decoy animals, by covering themselves with a skin, and running about upon all fours, which they do very nimbly, as appeared from the specimens of their skill, which they exhibited before the officers, making a kind of noise or neighing at the same time; and, on these occasions, the masks, or carved heads, as well as the real dried heads, of the different animals, are put on.

Their principal tools are the chissel and the knife. The chissel is a long flat piece fitted into a handle of wood. A stone serves for a mallet, and a piece of fish-skin for a polisher.

Their language is, by no means, harsh or disagreeable, farther than proceeds from their using the *k* and *b* with more force, or pronouncing them with less softness than we do. They have one sound, which is very frequent, and not used by us. It is formed in a particular manner by clashing the tongue partly against the roof of the mouth. It is difficult to represent this sound by any composition of our letters, unless from *lyxthl*: it is generally used as a termination. The next most general termination is composed of *il*; and many words end with *z* and *si*. A specimen or two, of each of these, is here put down:

<i>Opulxthl</i> ,	The sun.
<i>Onulxthl</i> ,	The moon.
<i>Kabsheel</i> ,	Dead.
<i>Teesheel</i> ,	To throw a stone.
<i>Koomitz</i> ,	A human skull.
<i>Quahmisi</i> ,	Fish roe.

On the 27th of April both the ships bore away North West, in which direction they supposed the coast to lie. At half past one in the afternoon it blew a hurricane; so that Captain Cook judged it highly dangerous to run any longer before it, and therefore brought the ships to. At this time, the Resolution sprung a leak. It was found to be under the starboard buttock; where, from the bread-room, they could both hear and see the water rush in; and, as they then thought, two feet under water. But in this they were happily mistaken; for it was afterwards found to be even with the water-line, if not above it, when the ship was upright. After the water was baled out, one pump kept it under to their no small satisfaction.

On the 28th of April, the weather began to clear up; and, being able to see several leagues round, they steered more to the Northward.

At seven in the evening, on the 1st of May, they got sight of the land, which, abounds with hills, but one considerably out-tops the rest; this was called Mount Edgcombe. It was wholly covered with snow; as were also all the other elevated hills.

At half an hour past four in the morning, on the 3d, they saw a large inlet, distant six leagues; and the most advanced point of the land, lying under a very high peaked mountain, which obtained the name of *Mount Fair Weather*. The inlet was named *Cross Sound*, as being first seen on that day, so marked in our calendar.

On the 4th, they saw several whales, seals, and porpoises; many gulls, and several flocks of birds, which had a black ring about the head; the tip of the tail, and upper part of the wings with a black band; and the rest blueish above, and white below. They also saw a brownish duck, with a black or deep blue head and neck, sitting upon the water.

From the 4th to the 10th, nothing very interesting occurred. On the 10th, they found themselves no more than three leagues from the coast of the continent, which extended from East half North, to North West half West, as far as the eye could reach.

Here they saw an island extending from North to South, distance about six leagues.

On

On
o'clock
and
the ot
expect
oblige
emine
paper
ships,
it he i
coin, c
furnish
Lincol
that g
Island.
directio
is not a
of it.
At t
verge c
tion, w
was of
bought
no mar
They
was th
the leal
reasons
no soon
they co
cessary.
clearer
Cape,
brooke,
the Cap
Whe
taking
several
To th
of shoot
to them
ance in

On the 11th, they bore up for the island. At ten o'clock in the morning, Captain Cook went in a boat, and landed upon it with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding it farther to the hills than was expected, and the way being steep and woody, he was obliged to drop the design. At the foot of a tree, on an eminence not far from the shore, he left a bottle with a paper in it, on which were inscribed the names of the ships, and the date of their discovery; and along with it he inclosed two silver twopenny pieces of his Majesty's coin, of the date 1772. These, with many others, were furnished him by the Rev. Dr. Kaye, (now Dean of Lincoln) and, as a mark of his esteem and regard for that gentleman, he named the island after him *Kaye's Island*. It is eleven or twelve leagues in length, in the direction of North East and South West; but its breadth is not above a league, or a league and a half, in any part of it.

At the place where they landed, a fox came from the verge of the wood, and eyed them with very little emotion, walking leisurely without any signs of fear. He was of a reddish-yellow colour, like some of the skins we bought at Nootka, but not of a large size. There were no marks of its ever having been inhabited.

They were now threatened with a fog and a storm; it was therefore necessary to get into some place to stop the leak, before they encountered another gale. These reasons induced them to steer for an inlet, which they had no sooner reached, than the weather became so foggy that they could not see a mile before them; and it became necessary to secure the ships in some place, to wait for a clearer sky. With this view, they hauled close under a Cape, which Captain Cook now called Cape Hinchinbrooke, and anchored before a small cove, a little within the Cape, in eight fathoms water.

When the fog dispersed, they had an opportunity of taking a view of the land near them, when they observed several rocky islands.

To these islands Mr. Gore was sent in a boat, in hopes of shooting some eatable birds; but he had hardly got to them, before about twenty natives made their appearance in two large canoes; on which he thought proper to

return to the ships, and they followed him. They would not venture along-side, but kept at some distance, hallooing aloud, and alternately clapping and extending their arms; and, in a short time, began a kind of song exactly after the manner of those at Nootka. Their heads were also powdered with feathers. One man held out a white garment, which was interpreted as a sign of friendship; and another stood up in the canoe, quite naked, for almost a quarter of an hour, with his arms stretched out like a cross, and motionless. The canoes were not constructed of wood, as at King George's or Nootka Sound. The frame only, being slender laths, was of that substance; the outside consisting of the skins of seals, or of such like animals. Though they returned their friendly signs, they could not induce them to come along-side.

The natives who visited them the preceding evening, came off again in the morning, but were still afraid to venture on board. At eight o'clock, the violence of the squalls obliged the ships to anchor in thirteen fathoms, in a bay. The night was exceedingly stormy.

Next morning early, many of the natives came, and some ventured on board; amongst them a good-looking middle-aged man, who was afterwards found to be a Chief. He was clothed in a dress of the sea-otter's skin; and had on his head such a cap as is worn by the people of King George's Sound, ornamented with sky-blue glass beads, about the size of a large pea. He seemed to set a much higher value upon these, than upon the white glass beads which they had on board: any sorts of beads, however, were in high estimation with these people; and they readily gave whatever they had, in exchange for them; even their fine sea-otter skins. But here it is necessary to observe, that they set no more value upon these than upon other skins.

They could not prevail upon the Chief to trust himself below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions remain long on board: but while they had their company, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon betrayed a thievish disposition. At length, after being about three or four hours along-side the Resolution, they all left her, and went to the Discovery; none having been there before, except one man, who, at
this

this time
thither i
served,
somethin
trymen
ship. B

As soo
the head
they had
nient pla
operation
the Ame
towards t
seeing th
all the ca
on board
of a guar
her. So
others ca
and the r
stant they
them, th
noes, and
down the
as if the
rather a
what they
man who
Resolutio
of her;
and secur
one or t
plunder
distance
with this
of them,
drew the
on deck.
for plun
rudder o
board to
canoes.

this time, came from her, and immediately returned thither in company with the rest. When this was observed, it was imagined that this man had met with something there, which he knew would please his countrymen better than what they met with at the other ship. But this was a mistake, as will soon appear.

As soon as they were gone, a boat was sent to sound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate, they had thoughts of laying the ship ashore, if a convenient place could be found where they might begin operations to stop the leak. It was not long before all the Americans left the Discovery, and made their way towards the boat employed as above. The officer in her seeing this, returned to the ship, and was followed by all the canoes. The boat's crew had no sooner come on board, leaving in her two of their number by way of a guard, than some of the Americans stepped into her. Some presented their spears before the two men; others cast loose the rope which fastened her to the ship; and the rest attempted to tow her away. But the instant they saw the people on board preparing to oppose them, they let her go, stepped out of her into their canoes, and made signs to Captain Cook's people to lay down their arms, appearing as perfectly unconcerned as if they had done nothing amiss. This, though rather a more daring attempt, was hardly equal to what they had meditated on board the Discovery. The man who came and carried all his countrymen from the Resolution to the other ship, had first been on board of her; where, after looking down all the hatchways, and seeing nobody but the officer of the watch, and one or two more, he no doubt thought they might plunder her with ease; especially as she lay at some distance from the other ship. It was unquestionably with this view, that they all repaired to her. Several of them, without any ceremony, went on board; drew their knives; made signs to the officer and people on deck to keep off; and began to look about them for plunder. The first thing they met with was the rudder of one of the boats, which they threw overboard to those of their party who had remained in the canoes. Before they had time to find another object

that pleased their fancy, the crew were alarmed, and began to con. upon deck armed with cutlasses. On seeing this, the whole company of plunderers sneaked off in their canoes, with as much deliberation and indifference as they had given up the boat; and they were observed describing to those who had not been on board, how much longer the knives of the ship's crew were than their own.

Just as they were going to weigh the anchor to proceed farther up the bay, it began to blow and to rain as hard as before; so that they were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie fast. Toward the evening, finding that the gale did not moderate, and that it might be some time before an opportunity offered to get higher up, Captain Cook came to a resolution to heel the ship where they were; and, with this view, moored her with a kedg anchor and hawser. In heaving the anchor out of the boat, one of the seamen, either through ignorance or carelessness, or both, was carried over-board by the buoy-rope, and followed the anchor to the bottom. It is remarkable, that, in this very critical situation, he had presence of mind to disengage himself, and come up to the surface of the water, where he was taken up, with one of his legs fractured in a dangerous manner.

Early the next morning, they gave the ship a good heel to port, in order to come at, and stop the leak.

The leak being stopped, at four o'clock in the morning of the 17th, they weighed, and steered to the North-Westward, with a light breeze at East North East; thinking, if there should be any passage to the North through this inlet, that it must be in that direction. They were now upward of five hundred and twenty leagues to the Westward of any part of Hudson's Bay.

Next morning at three o'clock, they weighed, and proceeded Southward.

At two in the afternoon, the wind veered to the South West, and South West by South, which reduced them to the necessity of plying.

To the place they had just left, they gave the name of Prince William's Sound.

These

These
tom amon
cut quite
the first
the man

The m
red, and
blue, or
and the v
tate them
black, th
very simil
of Green
took mor
or rather

Besides
there are
find ther
natives br
cubs; fr
They also
had very
the comm
varied w
black on
points ou
mentione
saw the
deer.

They f
the *aleyo*
bright co
frequentl

The o
which we
they cau
purplish
The rock
fish; and
a red cra

On T
South W

These people have a strange appearance, from a custom amongst them, of having their under lip slit, or cut quite through the direction of the mouth; and the first man who saw this incision, called out, that the man had two mouths.

The men frequently paint their faces of a bright red, and of a black colour, and sometimes, of a blue, or leaden colour; but not in any regular figure: and the women, in some measure, endeavour to imitate them, by puncturing or staining the chin with black, that comes to a point in each cheek; a practice very similar to which, is in fashion amongst the females of Greenland. Upon the whole, no savages ever took more pains than these people do, to ornament, or rather to disfigure their persons.

Besides the animals, which were seen at Nootka, there are some others in this place which they did not find there; such as the white bear; of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some entire skins of cubs; from which their size could not be determined. They also found the wolverene, or quickhatch, which had very bright colours; a larger sort of ermine than the common one, which is, the same as at Nootka, varied with a brown colour, and with scarcely any black on its tail. The number of skins found here, points out the great plenty of these several animals just mentioned; but it is remarkable, that they neither saw the skins of the moose, nor of the common deer.

They found here the white-headed eagle; the shag; the *alcyon*, or great king-fisher, which had very fine bright colours; and the humming-bird, which came frequently, and flew about the ship, while at anchor.

The only fish they got, were some torok and halibut, which were chiefly brought by the natives to sell; and they caught a few sculpins about the ship; with some purplish star-fish, that had seventeen or eighteen rays. The rocks were observed to be almost destitute of shell-fish; and the only other animal of this tribe seen, was a red crab, covered with spines of a very large size.

On Thursday, May the 21st, they steered to the South West, and passed a lofty promontory. As the

discovery of it was connected with the Princess Elizabeth's birth day, it was named *Cape Elizabeth*. They continued their course with little variation; observing many high mountains, near the coast, till the 30th, when they anchored in nineteen fathoms water under the Eastern shore.

Next day they stood over to the Western shore with a fresh gale at North North East. This, with the other on the opposite shore, contracted the channel to the breadth of four leagues. Through this channel ran a prodigious tide. It looked frightful to them who could not tell whether the agitation of the water was occasioned by the stream, or by the breaking of the waves against rocks or sands. As they met with no shoal, it was concluded to be the former; but, in the end, they found themselves mistaken.

As they proceeded farther up, the marks of a river displayed themselves. The water was found to be fresher; inasmuch that they were convinced they were in a large river, and not in a strait, communicating with the Northern seas. However, they weighed with the next flood in the morning of the 31st, and plied higher up, or rather drove up with the tide; for they had but little wind.

At nine o'clock they came to an anchor, in sixteen fathoms water, about two leagues from the West shore; the tide was on the ebb. They saw an opening between the mountains on the Eastern shore, bearing East from the station of the ships, with low land, which they supposed to be islands lying between them and the main land. From these appearances, they were in some doubt whether the inlet did not take an Easterly direction, through the above opening; or whether that opening was only a branch of it, and the main channel continued its Northern direction through the low land now in sight.

The Captain sent two boats to ascertain this matter: they returned, reporting there was no passage.

If the discovery of this great river, * which promises to vie with the most considerable ones already known

* Captain Cook having here left a blank which he had not filled up with any particular name, Lord Sandwich directed, with the greatest propriety, that it should be called Cook's River.

to be capable of extensive inland navigation, should prove of use either to the present, or to any future age, the time they spent in it ought to be the less regretted: But to our adventurers, who had a much greater object in view, the delay thus occasioned was an essential loss. They knew not how far they might have to proceed to the South; and they were now convinced, that the continent of North America extended farther to the West, than from the modern most reputable charts they had reason to expect. This made the existence of a passage into Hudson's Bay less probable; or, at least, shewed it to be of greater extent. It was a satisfaction, however, to reflect, that, if they had not examined this very considerable inlet, it would have been assumed, by speculative fabricators of geography, as a fact, that it communicated with the sea to the North, or with Hudson's Bay to the East.

In the afternoon, Mr. King was sent with two armed boats, with orders to land on the Northern point of the low land, on the South East side of the river; there to display the flag; to take possession of the country and river, in his Majesty's name; and to bury in the ground a bottle, containing some pieces of English coin, of the year 1772, and a paper, on which were inscribed the names of the ships, and the date of their discovery.

They weighed anchor as soon as it was high water; and, with a faint breeze Southerly, stood over to the West shore, where the return of the flood obliged them to anchor early next morning. Soon after, several large, and some small canoes, with natives, came off; who bartered their skins; after which they sold their garments, till many of them were quite naked.

They then went to the opposite shore and anchored. A good many of the natives came off, when they were in this station, and attended upon them all the morning. Their company was very acceptable; for they brought with them a large quantity of very fine salmon; most of it was split ready for drying; and several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships.

In the afternoon, the mountains, for the first time since entering the river, were clear of clouds; and they discovered

discovered a volcano in one of those on the West side. It did not make any striking appearance, emitting only a white smoke, but no fire.

The wind remaining Southerly, they continued to tide it down the river. Before they left this place, six canoes came off from the East shore; and after looking at the ships with surprise, for some time, they began to barter, and did not go till they had parted with all their skins, most of which were made up into garments, and some few were old, ragged, and lousy.

One o'clock, next morning, a fresh breeze sprung up at West, with which, on Saturday, June 6, they got under sail.

On the 7th, they passed a large bay, which was then named Whitsuntide Bay. The land on the East side of this bay is destitute of wood, and partly free from snow.

In standing in for the coast, they crossed the mouth of Whitsuntide Bay, and saw land all round the bottom of it.

The three following days they had almost constant misty weather, with drizzling rain; so that they seldom had a sight of the coast.

The fog clearing up, with the change of the wind to South West, in the evening of the 12th they had a sight of the land bearing West, twelve leagues distant. They stood in for it early next morning. At noon they were not above three miles from it; an elevated point, which obtained the name of *Cape Barnabas*, bore North East, ten miles distant.

Nothing interesting happened till the 18th; when, having occasion to tend a boat on board the *Discovery*, one of the people in her shot a very beautiful bird of the hawk kind. It is somewhat less than a duck, and of a black colour, except the fore part of the head, which is white; and from above and behind each eye arises an elegant yellowish white crest, revolved backward as a ram's horn. The bill and feet are red. They had for some days seen these birds in large flocks.

On the 19th, while they were under way, some natives, in three or four canoes, brought a wooden case or box on board the *Discovery*; it was opened, and a piece of paper was found, folded up carefully, upon which something was written.

written
date 17
written
The ne
ceded
globe.

Capt
Russians
fortunat
method
with hu
furious o
No such
did not
Westwa
to deter
number

At th
hills, to
The mo
volcano,
smoke.

at the v
In the
upward
hundred
In the h
one man
took of
Russians
these pe
but fro
now a
given cl
rie had
some fir
shafts o
him a b
opened

On t
land wa
tain ne

written in the Russian language, as was supposed. The date 1778 was prefixed to it; and, in the body of the written note, there was a reference to the year 1776. The numerals marked sufficiently that others had preceded the English in visiting this dreary part of the globe.

Captain Clerke was, at first, of opinion, that some Russians had been shipwrecked here; and that these unfortunate persons, seeing the ships pass, had taken this method to inform them of their situation. Impressed with humane sentiments, on such an occasion, he was desirous of stopping till they might have time to join them. No such idea occurred to Captain Cook; therefore they did not make any further enquiry, but bore away to the Westward, along the coast, or islands; for it was not easy to determine whether the nearest land was continent, or a number of islands.

At the distance of two miles, they saw some stupendous hills, towering above the clouds, and covered with snow. The most South-westerly of them was discovered to have a *volcano*, which continually threw up vast columns of black smoke. Its figure is a complete cone, and the *volcano* is at the very summit.

In the afternoon, having three hours calm, they caught upward of a hundred halibuts, some of which weighed an hundred pounds. This was a very seasonable refreshment. In the height of their fishing, a small canoe, conducted by one man, came to them. On approaching the ship, he took off his cap, and bowed. It was evident, that the Russians must have a communication and traffic with these people, not only from their acquired politeness, but from the note before mentioned. But here was now a fresh proof of it; for this visiter wore a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, or stuff. He had nothing to barter, except a grey fox-skin, and some fishing implements or harpoons, the heads of the shafts of which were neatly made of bone. He had with him a bladder, which was supposed to contain oil; for he opened it, took a mouthful, and then fastened it again.

On the 22d a fog came on, and no part of the mainland was in sight, except the *volcano*, and another mountain near it.

For two or three days they had very cloudy weather. At six in the morning of the 24th, they got a sight of the continent, four leagues distant. The foggy weather continued for several days.

At half past four on the 27th, they were much alarmed at the sound of breakers very near. On heaving the lead they found twenty-eight fathoms water, and the next cast twenty-five; they immediately brought both ships to, and anchored.

A few hours after, the fog having cleared a little, it appeared that they had escaped very imminent danger. They found themselves three quarters of a mile from the North East side of an island, which extended from South by West to North by East. Two elevated rocks, the one bearing South by East, and the other East by South, were about half a league each from them, and about the same distance from each other. There were several breakers about them; and yet Providence had, in the dark, conducted the ships through, between these rocks, which they would not have ventured in a clear day, and to such an anchoring-place, that they could not have chosen a better.

On a point, which bore West from the ship, three quarters of a mile distant, were several natives and their habitations. To this place they were seen to tow in two whales, which it was supposed they had just killed. A few of them, now and then, came off to the ships, and bartered a few trifling things; but never remained above a quarter of an hour at a time. They behaved with a degree of politeness uncommon to savage tribes.

On the 28th early in the morning they weighed, and soon came to an anchor on the Southern shore, while they lay there.

At day-break, on the 28th, they weighed, with a light breeze at South, which was succeeded by variable light airs from all directions; but as there run a rapid tide in their favour, they got through before the ebb made. They came to anchor in twenty-eight fathoms water, pretty near the Southern shore. Here they found the tide to run full five knots and an half in an hour.

While they lay here, several of the natives came off, and bartered a few fishing implements for tobacco. One

of

of the
by the
he we
witho
His d
the la
an un
of bir
togeth
His o
others
an Eu
strang
At
they a
Soo
such a
He pr
the Ru
on bo
and m
to the
for wh
bows a
Thi
Fogs c
good v
Hav
North
On
water,
numbe
At
felves
two pe
ton wa
the on
Soo
that h
farthe
took p
left on

of them, a young man, overfet his canoe. The youth, by this accident, was obliged to come into the ship; and he went down into the cabin, upon the first invitation, without expressing the least reluctance, or uneasiness. His dress was an upper garment, like a shirt, made of the large gut of some sea-animal, probably the whale; and an under-garment, of the same shape, made of the skins of birds, dressed with the feathers on, and neatly sewed together; the feathered side being worn next his skin. His own clothes being wet, Captain Cook gave him others, in which he dressed himself with as much ease as an European, to whose customs it is evident they are no strangers.

At low water, having towed the ship into the harbour, they anchored in nine fathoms water.

Soon after, a native of the island brought on board such another note as had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to Captain Cook; but it was written in the Russian language, which, as already observed, none on board could read. As it could be of no use to him, and might be of consequence to others, he returned it to the bearer, and dismissed him with a few presents; for which he expressed his thanks, by making several low bows as he retired.

This country is called by the natives *Samganoodha*. Fogs detained them till the 2d of July. Great plenty of good water may be easily got here, but nothing else.

Having put to sea, on the 3d they steered to the North.

On the 4th it fell calm, and being in thirty fathoms water, they put over hooks and lines, and caught a good number of fine cod-fish.

At five in the morning of the 16th, they found themselves nearer the land than was expected. Here, between two points, the coast forms a bay. Lieutenant Williamson was sent with orders to land, and see what direction the coast took, and what the country produced.

Soon after Mr. Williamson returned, and reported, that having climbed the highest hill, he found, that the farthest part of the coast in sight bore nearly North. He took possession of the country in his Majesty's name, and left on the hill a bottle, in which were inscribed, on a piece

piece of paper, the names of the ships, and the date of the discovery. The promontory, to which he gave the name of *Cape Newenham*, is a rocky point of considerable height. The hills are naked; but on the lower grounds grew grass, and other plants, very few of which were in flower. He saw no other animal but a doe and her fawn; and a dead sea-horse, or cow, upon the beach. Of these animals they had lately seen a great many.

From the 16th to the 21st nothing material occurred. On the 21st they were obliged to anchor, to avoid running upon a shoal, which had only a depth of five feet. While they lay here, twenty-seven men of the country, each in a canoe, came off to the ships, which they approached with great caution; however, some few came near enough to receive a few trifles that were thrown to them. This encouraged the rest to venture along-side; and a traffic presently commenced; the ship's people got dresses of skins, bows, arrows, darts, and wooden vessels, in exchange for whatever was offered them. They seemed to be the same sort of people that they had of late met with all along this coast; wore the same kind of ornaments in their lips and noses; but were far more dirty, and not so well clothed.

Variable winds, with rain, prevailed till the 3d of July. Mr. Anderson, who had been lingering under a consumption for more than twelve months, expired between three and four this afternoon. He was a sensible young man, an agreeable companion, well skilled in his own profession; and had acquired considerable knowledge in other branches of science. He wrote several of the descriptive parts of this voyage; and, had it pleased God to have spared his life, the public, no doubt, would have received from him such communications, on various parts of the natural history of the several places he visited, as would have abundantly shewn that he was not unworthy of this commendation. Soon after he had breathed his last, land was seen to the Westward, twelve leagues distant. It was supposed to be an island; and, to perpetuate the memory of the deceased, for whom Captain Cook had a very high regard, they named it *Anderson's Island*.

On

On the
ing We
a sledge
as the
or snow
the part

Being
6th to the
stood aw
chor unc
rock or
some low
East by

This
it is the
mity of

As d
fumed th
they anc

As th
on the
the fight
sion, or
the coun
habitic
ingly, w
some of
armed w
up on a
drew ne
and wer
make low
they-reti
signs and
some triff
skins, and

As the
always i
their spea
to suppor

Those
hands, h

On the 4th they discovered a pretty high island bearing West by North; this they named *Sledge Island*, from a sledge being found upon it. It seemed to be such a one as the Russians in Kamtschatka make use of over the ice or snow. The construction of it was admirable, and all the parts neatly put together.

Being convinced, after several observations from the 6th to the 9th, that the whole was a continued coast, they stood away for its North West part, and came to an anchor under it in seventeen fathoms water. A high steep rock or island bore West by South. Under this hill lies some low land, the extreme point of which bore North East by East, about three miles distant.

This point of land was named *Cape Prince of Wales*; it is the more remarkable, by being the Western extremity of all America hitherto known.

At day-break in the morning of the 10th, they resumed their course to the West; and about ten o'clock they anchored in a large bay, two miles from the shore.

As they were standing into this bay, they perceived on the North shore a village, and some people, whom the sight of the ships seemed to have thrown into confusion, or fear. They could plainly see persons running up the country with burdens upon their backs. At these habitations Captain Cook proposed to land; and, accordingly, went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. About thirty or forty men, each armed with a spontoon, a bow, and arrows, stood drawn up on a rising ground close by the village. As they drew near, three of them came down toward the shore, and were so polite as to take off their caps, and to make low bows. As soon as the boats touched the shore, they retired. The Captain followed them alone, and by signs and gestures prevailed on them to stop, and receive some trifling presents. In return they gave him two fox-skins, and a couple of sea-horse teeth.

As the Captain advanced, they retreated backward; always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the rising ground stood ready to support them with their arrows.

Those who stood ready with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung over their right shoulder by
 Q a leachern

a leathern strap. A leathern quiver, slung over their left shoulder, contained arrows ; and some of these quivers were extremely beautiful ; being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments.

Several other things, and, in particular, their clothing, shewed that they were possessed of a degree of ingenuity, far surpassing what one could expect to find amongst so Northern a people. All the Americans they had seen, since their arrival on that coast, were rather low of stature, with round chubby faces, and high cheek bones. The people they were now amongst, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made. In short, they appeared to be a quite different nation. All of them had their ears bored ; and some had glass beads hanging to them. These were the only fixed ornaments they saw about them ; for they wear none to the lips. This is another thing in which they differ from the Americans they had lately seen.

Their clothing consisted of a cap, a frock, a pair of breeches, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of leather, or of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, &c. and extremely well dressed ; some with the hair or fur on ; but others without it. They saw neither women nor children.

They have a great number of dogs of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long soft hair like wool. They are, probably, used in drawing their sledges in winter ; for sledges they have. It is also not improbable, that dogs may constitute a part of their food. Several lay dead that had been killed that morning.

After a very short stay with these people, they returned to their ships ; and soon after they weighed anchor, and stood out of the bay. In a few hours their position was nearly in the middle of the channel between the two coasts, each being seven leagues distant.

From this station they steered East, in order to get nearer the American coast.

On Monday the 7th, before noon, they perceived a brightness in the Northern horizon, like that reflected
from

from ice
it was i
About a
left the
brightne
tacked,
thoms w
for it wa
by South
Here we
but far n
On the
ther to t
the edge
and seem
farther
was extr
upon it

They
saw land
about th
forms a
for which
other ex
that the
of the A

Their
were in
body of
It was e
tween it
less it sh
Captain
made the
himself

The
horses ;
boats fro

By sev
on board
till now,
were not

from ice. It was little noticed, from a supposition that it was improbable they should meet with any so soon. About an hour after, the sight of a large field of ice, left them no longer in doubt about the cause of the brightness of the horizon. At half past two, they tacked, close to the edge of the ice, in twenty-two fathoms water, not being able to stand on any farther; for it was totally impenetrable, and extended from West by South, to East by North, as far as the eye could reach. Here were abundance of sea-horses; some in the water, but far more upon the ice.

On the 18th, at noon, they were near five leagues farther to the Eastward. They were, at this time, close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall; and seemed to be ten or twelve feet high at least. But, farther North, it appeared much higher. Its surface was extremely rugged; and, here and there, they saw upon it pools of water.

They now stood to the Southward; at this time they saw land extending from South to South East by East, about three or four miles distant. The Eastern extreme forms a point, which was much incumbered with ice; for which reason it obtained the name of *Icy Cape*. The other extreme of the land was lost in the horizon; so that there can be no doubt of its being a continuation of the American continent.

Their situation was now more and more critical. They were in shoal water, upon a lee-shore; and the main body of the ice to windward, driving down upon them. It was evident, that if they remained much longer between it and the land, it would force them on shore; unless it should happen to take the ground before them. Captain Cook, thus situated, had no time to lose; he made the signal for the *Discovery* to tack, and tacked himself at the same time.

The 19th, on the ice lay a prodigious number of sea-horses; and as they were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were sent to get some.

By seven o'clock in the evening, they had received, on board the *Resolution*, nine of these animals; which, till now, were supposed to be sea-cows; so that they were not a little disappointed, especially some of the

seamen, who, for the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they have been disappointed now, nor have known the difference, if they had not happened to have one or two on board, who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals these were, and that no one ever eat of them. But, notwithstanding this, they lived upon them as long as they lasted; and there were few on board who did not prefer them to salt meat.

The fat, at first, is as sweet as marrow; but in a few days it grows rancid, unless it be salted; in which state, it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse, black, and has rather a strong taste; and the heart is nearly as well tasted as that of a bullock.

They lie, in herds of many hundreds, upon the ice; huddling one over the other like swine; and roar or bray very loud; so that, in the night, or in foggy weather, they gave notice of the vicinity of the ice, before it could be seen. They never found the whole herd asleep; some being always upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat, would wake those next to them; and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would be awake presently. But they were seldom in a hurry to get away, till after they had been once fired at. Then they would tumble one over the other into the sea, in the utmost confusion. They did not appear to be that dangerous animal some authors have described; not even when attacked. They are rather more so to appearance, than in reality. The female will defend the young one to the very last; nor will the young one quit the dam, though she be dead; so that, if you kill one, you are sure of the other. The dam, when in the water, holds the young one between her fore-fins.

The dimensions and weight of one, which was none of the largest, were as follow:

	Feet	Inches.
Length from the snout to the tail	9	4
Circumference of the body at the shoulder	7	10
Circumference near the hind fins	5	6

Weight

Weight
head
Head
Skin

By the
we were,
no way le
which wa

They
which tin
The num
had seen,
began to

On th
cleared u
Northwar
view of
like the
next the

The fe
when the
Captain
to make a
Atlantic
ing. Hi
out some
wood and
they shou
provemen
same tim
in farther

At day
steered fu
bly in w
as ever,
got fight
distant.

Wedne
sunshine;
distance
tants, an

Weight of the carcase, without the	}	lb.
head, skin, or entrails - - -		854
Head - - - - -		4 $\frac{1}{2}$
Skin - - - - -		205

By the time that we had got our sea-horses on board, we were, in a manner, surrounded with the ice; and had no way left to clear it, but by standing to the Southward, which was done till three o'clock next morning.

They combated the ice from the 19th to the 27th, in which time they killed a great number of sea-horses. The number of these animals, on all the ice that they had seen, is almost incredible. By this time the sailors began to relish them.

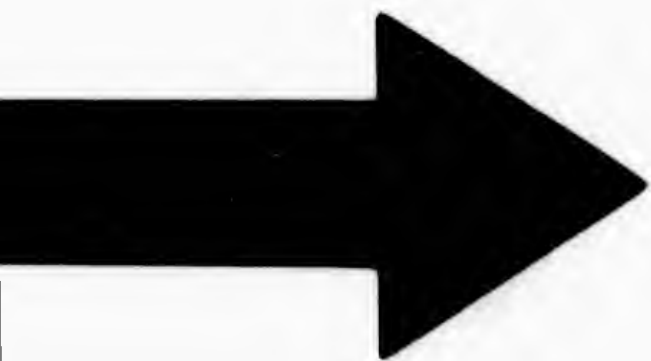
On the 29th, the weather, which had been hazy, cleared up; especially to the Southward, Westward, and Northward. This enabled them to have a pretty good view of the Asiatic coast; which, in every respect, is like the opposite one of America: that is, low land next the sea, with elevated land farther back.

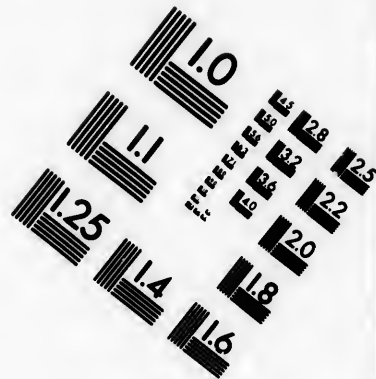
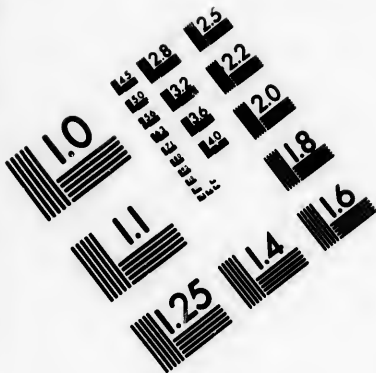
The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost is expected to set in, so near at hand, that Captain Cook did not think it consistent with prudence to make any farther attempts to find a passage into the Atlantic this year; so little was the prospect of succeeding. His attention was now directed toward finding out some place where they might supply themselves with wood and water; and the object uppermost was, how they should spend the winter, so as to make some improvements in geography and navigation, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the North, in farther search of a passage, the ensuing summer.

At day-break, on the 30th, they made sail, and steered such a course as would bring them most probably in with the land; for the weather was as thick as ever, and it snowed incessantly. At ten, they got sight of the coast, bearing South West, four miles distant.

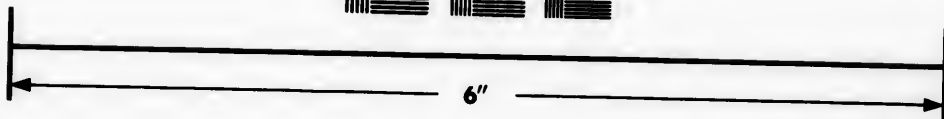
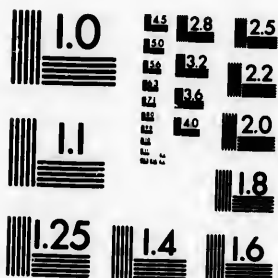
Wednesday, September 2, they had fair weather and sunshine; and as they ranged along the coast, at the distance of four miles, they saw several of the inhabitants, and some of their habitations, which looked like







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

little hillocks of earth. None of them, however, attempted to come off.

The more they were convinced of being now upon the coast of Asia, the more they were at a loss to reconcile Mr. Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago with their observations; and they had no way to account for the great difference, but by supposing, that they had mistaken some part of what he calls the Island of Alaschka for the American continent, and had missed the channel that separates them. Admitting even this, there would still have been a considerable difference. It was with them a matter of some consequence, to clear up this point the present season, that they might have but one object in view the next. And, as these Northern isles are represented by him as abounding with wood, they were in hopes, if they should find them, of getting a supply of that article, which they now began to be in great want of on board.

In hopes of getting some wood, which they now began to want, they steered over for the American Coast, and on the sixth got sight of it.

On the 7th, they got close in with the land.

On the 9th, they found themselves upon a coast covered with wood; an agreeable sight, to which, of late, they had not been accustomed. At nine o'clock next morning, being about a league from the West shore, Captain Cook took two boats, and landed, attended by Mr. King, to seek wood and water.

Several people were seen, and one man came off in a small canoe. The Captain gave him a knife, and a few beads, with which he seemed well pleased. Having made signs to him to bring them something to eat, he immediately left them, and paddled toward the shore: but, meeting another man coming off, who happened to have two dried salmon, he got them from him; and on returning to the ship, would give them to nobody but the person who had given him the knife and the beads. Others of the natives, soon after, came off, and exchanged a few dry fish, for such trifles as they could get. They were most desirous of knives; and they had no dislike to tobacco.

After

After dinner, Lieutenant Gore was sent to see if wood and water were there to be got; or rather water; for the whole beach round the bay seemed to be covered with drift-wood. About eight o'clock, he returned, with the launch laden with wood.

Next day, a family of the natives came near to the place where they were taking off wood. There were the husband, wife, and child; also a fourth person, who bore the human shape, and that was all; for he was the most deformed cripple ever seen or heard of. Iron was their beloved article. For four knives, which were made out of an old iron hoop, they got from them near four hundred pounds weight of fish, which they had caught on this or the preceding day. Some were trout, and the rest were, in size and taste, somewhat between a mullet and a herring. They gave the child, who was a girl, a few beads; on which the mother burst into tears, then the father, then the cripple, and, at last, to complete the concert, the girl herself. Before night, they had got the ships amply supplied with wood; and had carried on board above twelve tons of water to each.

On the 4th, a party of men were sent on shore to cut brooms, which were wanted, and the branches of spruce-trees for brewing beer.

At day-break, on the 16th, nine men, each in his canoe, paid them a visit. They approached the ship with some caution; and evidently came with no other view than to gratify their curiosity. They gave them a song; while one of their number beat upon a kind of drum, and another made a thousand antic motions with his hands and body. There was, however, nothing savage; either in the song, or in the gestures that accompanied it.

The dwellings of these people were seated close to the beach. They consist simply of a sloping roof, without any side-walls, composed of logs, and covered with grass and earth. The floor is also laid with logs; the entrance is at one end; the fire-place just within it; and a small hole is made near the door to let out the smoke.

The inlet here was, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, Speaker of the House of Commons, (Mr. King's near relation) named *Norton's Sound*.

It

It was now high time to think of leaving these Northern regions, and to retire to some place during the winter, where they might procure some refreshments for the people, and a small supply of provisions. No place was so conveniently within their reach, where they could expect to have their wants relieved, as the Sandwich islands; to them therefore they proceeded.

They weighed on the 17th of September, and steered South.

On the 25th the Resolution sprung a leak, under the starboard buttock, which filled the spirit-room with water, before it was discovered; and it was so considerable as to keep one pump constantly employed. They durst not put the ship upon the other tack, for fear of getting upon shoals; but continued standing to the West, till six in the evening of the 26th, when they wore and stood to the Eastward: and then the leak no longer troubled them. This proved, that it was above the water-line; which was no small satisfaction.

At one o'clock in the afternoon of the 3d of October, they anchored in Samganoodha Harbour; and the next morning the carpenters of both ships were set to work to rip off the sheathing of and under the wale, on the starboard side abaft. Many of the seams were found quite open, so that it was no wonder that so much water had found its way into the ship.

There were great quantities of berries found ashore. In order to avail themselves as much as possible of this useful refreshment, one-third of the people, by turns, had leave to go and pick them. If there were any seeds of the scurvy, in either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce beer, which they had to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them.

A boat was sent out every morning, and seldom returned without eight or ten halibut; which was more than sufficient to serve all the people. The halibut were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to salmon. Thus they not only procured a supply of fish for present consumption; but had some to carry to sea. They caught one halibut that weighed two hundred and fifty pounds weight.

On

On the 8th, Captain Cook received by the hands of an Onalaska man, named Derramoufka, a very singular present, considering the place. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye made in the form of a loaf, for it inclosed some salmon, highly seasoned with pepper. This man had the like present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of them, written in a character which none of them could read. It was natural to suppose, that this present was from some Russians now in the neighbourhood; and therefore they sent, by the same hand, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine, and porter; which they thought would be as acceptable as any thing they had besides; and they soon knew, that in this they had not been mistaken. The Captain also sent with Derramoufka, Corporal Lediard of the marines, an intelligent man, in order to gain some farther information, with orders, that if he met with any Russians, he should endeavour to make them understand, that they were English, the friends and allies of their nation.

On the 10th, Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers; who, with some others, resided at Egookshac, where they had a dwelling-house, some store-houses, and a sloop of about thirty tons burthen. One of these men was either Master or Mate of this vessel; another of them wrote a very good hand, and understood figures: and they were all three well behaved, intelligent men, and very ready to give all the information in their power. But, for want of an interpreter, they had some difficulty to understand each other:

They are engaged in the fur-trade, which is now extended Eastward.

On the 14th, in the evening, while Mr. Webber and Captain Cook were at a village at a small distance from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who was the principal person amongst his countrymen in this and the neighbouring islands. His name was Erasim Gregoroff Sin Ismyloff. He arrived in a canoe carrying three persons, attended by twenty or thirty other canoes, each conducted by one man. The first thing they did, after landing, was to make a small tent for Ismyloff, of materials which they brought with them; and then they made others for themselves. Ismyloff having invited them
into

On the 8th, Captain Cook received by the hands of an Onalaska man, named Derramoufka, a very singular present, considering the place. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye made in the form of a loaf, for it inclosed some salmon, highly seasoned with pepper. This man had the like present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of them, written in a character which none of them could read. It was natural to suppose, that this present was from some Russians now in the neighbourhood; and therefore they sent, by the same hand, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine, and porter; which they thought would be as acceptable as any thing they had besides; and they soon knew, that in this they had not been mistaken. The Captain also sent with Derramoufka, Corporal Lediard of the marines, an intelligent man, in order to gain some farther information, with orders, that if he met with any Russians, he should endeavour to make them understand, that they were English, the friends and allies of their nation.

On the 10th, Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers; who, with some others, resided at Egooshac, where they had a dwelling-house, some store-houses, and a sloop of about thirty tons burthen. One of these men was either Master or Mate of this vessel; another of them wrote a very good hand, and understood figures: and they were all three well behaved, intelligent men, and very ready to give all the information in their power. But, for want of an interpreter, they had some difficulty to understand each other.

They are engaged in the fur-trade, which is now extended Eastward.

On the 14th, in the evening, while Mr. Webber and Captain Cook were at a village at a small distance from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who was the principal person amongst his countrymen in this and the neighbouring islands. His name was Erasim Gregoriov Sin Ismyloff. He arrived in a canoe carrying three persons, attended by twenty or thirty other canoes, each conducted by one man. The first thing they did, after landing, was to make a small tent for Ismyloff, of materials which they brought with them; and then they made others for themselves. Ismyloff having invited them
into

into his tent, set before them some dried salmon and berries, which was the best cheer he had. He appeared to be a sensible intelligent man. Captain Cook and he conversed by signs and figures.

From what they could gather from him and his countrymen, the Russians have made several attempts to get a footing upon that part of the continent, that lies contiguous to Oonalashka and the adjoining islands, but have always been repulsed by the natives.

He would fain have made the Captain a present of a sea-otter skin, which, he said, was worth eighty roubles at Kamtschatka; however, he thought proper to decline it, but accepted of some dried fish, and several baskets of the lily, or *saranne* root, which grows at Kamtschatka. In the afternoon Mr. Ismyloff, after dining with Captain Clerke, left them, with all his retinue, promising to return in a few days. Accordingly, on the 19th, he made them another visit.

He remained with them till the 21st, in the evening, when he took his final leave. To his care Captain Cook intrusted a letter to the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty, in which was inclosed a chart of all the Northern coasts they had visited. Mr. Ismyloff seemed to have abilities that might entitle him to a higher station in life, than that in which he was found.

After they became acquainted with these Russians, some of the gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island; where they always met with a hearty welcome. This settlement consisted of a dwelling-house, and two store-houses. And, besides the Russians, there was a number of Kamtschadales, and of the natives, as servants, or slaves to the former. Some others of the natives, who seemed independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians were all males; and they are taken, or, perhaps, purchased from their parents when young. There were, at this time, about twenty of these, who could be looked upon in no other light than as children. They all live in the same house; the Russians at the upper end, the Kamtschadales in the middle, and the natives at the lower end; where is fixed a large boiler for preparing their food, which consists chiefly of what the sea produces.

with

with
little
what
the
Cook
was
pud
no b
taste
gred
Exce
they
seem
stros
T
betw
pose
beav

T
inoff
as a

T
and
chub
straig
hind
bunc

Bo

feren
made
of bi
whol
men

and h

TH
and h
ing
that
prob

Ca

Oona

lurge

with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is little difference between the first and last table, besides what is produced by cookery, in which the Russians have the art of making indifferent things palatable. Captain Cook says he has eat whale's flesh of their dressing, which was thought very good; and they made a kind of pan-pudding of salmon-roe, beaten up fine, and fried, that is no bad *succedaneum* for bread. They may, now and then, taste real bread, or have a dish in which flour is an ingredient; but this can only be an occasional luxury. Except the juice of berries, which they sip at their meals, they have no other liquor besides pure water; and it seems to be very happy for them that they have nothing stronger.

There are Russians settled upon all the principal islands between Oonalashka and Kamtschatka, for the sole purpose of collecting furs. Their great object is the sea-beaver, or otter.

The natives, to all appearance, are a peaceable inoffensive people; and as to honesty, they might serve as a pattern to the most civilized nation upon earth.

These people are rather low in stature, but plump and well shaped; with rather short necks, swarthy chubby face; black eyes; small beards; and long, straight, black hair; which the men wear loose behind, and cut before, but the women tie up in a bunch.

Both sexes wear the same in fashion; the only difference is in the materials. The women's frock is made of seal skin; and that of the men, of the skins of birds; both reaching below the knee. This is the whole dress of the women. But, over the frock, the men wear another made of gut, which resists water; and has a hood to it, which draws over the head.

Their food consists of fish, sea-animals, birds, roots, and berries. They eat almost every thing raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that they were seen to make use of; and the first was probably learnt from the Russians.

Captain Cook was once present when the Chief of Oonalashka, made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, just caught. Before any was given to the

the Chief, two of his servants eat the gills, without any other dressing, besides squeezing out the slime. This done, one of them cut off the head of the fish, took it to the sea and washed it; then came with it, and sat down by the Chief, first pulling up some grass, upon a part of which the head was laid, and the rest strowed before the Chief. He then cut large pieces off the cheeks, and laid these within the reach of the great man, who swallowed them with as much satisfaction as the Europeans do raw oysters. When he had done, the remains of the head were cut in pieces, and given to the attendants, who tore off the meat with their teeth, and gnawed the bones like so many dogs.

As these people use no paint, they are not so dirty in their persons as the savages who thus besmear themselves; but are full as lousy and filthy in their houses. Their method of building is as follows: They dig, in the ground, an oblong square pit, the length of which seldom exceeds fifty feet, and the breadth twenty; but in general the dimensions are smaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood which the sea throws ashore. This roof is covered first with grass, and then with earth; so that the outward appearance is like a dunghill. In the middle of the roof, toward each end, is left a square opening, by which the light is admitted; one of these openings being for this purpose only, and the other being also used to go in and out by, with the help of a ladder, or rather a post, with steps cut in it. In some houses there is another entrance below; but this is not common. Round the sides and ends of the huts, the families (for several are lodged together) have their separate apartments, where they sleep, and sit at work; not upon benches, but in a kind of concave trench, which is dug all round the inside of the house, and covered with mats; so that this part is kept tolerably decent. But the middle of the house, which is common to all the families, is far otherwise; for, although it is covered with dry grass, it is a receptacle for filth of every kind, and the place for the urine trough.

Their household furniture consists of bowls, spoons, buckets, piggins, or cans, matted baskets, and

a Russian kettle or pot. All these utensils are very neatly made, and well formed; and yet they are supposed to have no other tools but the knife and the hatchet; that is, a small flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fitting it into a crooked wooden handle.

They make snats and baskets of grass, that are both beautiful and strong. Indeed, there is a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they neither want ingenuity nor perseverance.

No fire-place was seen in any one of their houses. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which are simple, and yet answer the purpose very well.

They produce fire both by collision and by attrition; the former by striking two stones one against another; on one of which a good deal of brimstone is first rubbed. The latter method is with two pieces of wood; one of which is a stick of about eighteen inches in length, and the other a flat piece. The pointed end of the stick they press upon the other, whirling it nimbly round as a drill; thus producing fire in a few minutes. Their canoes are built nearly after the manner of those used by the Greenlanders and Esquimaux; the framing being of slender laths, and the covering of seal-skins. These people are very expert in striking fish, both in the sea, and in rivers. They also make use of hooks and lines, nets and weirs. The hooks are composed of bone, and the lines of sinews.

The fishes which are common to other Northern seas, are found here; such as whales, grampuses, porpoises, sword-fish, halibut, cod, salmon, trout, seals, flat-fish; several other sorts of small fish. Sea-horses are, indeed, in prodigious numbers about the ice; and the sea-otter, it is supposed, is no where found but in this sea.

A very beautiful bird was shot in the woods at Norton Sound; which Captain Cook was informed is sometimes found in England, and known by the name of Chat-terer.

As their excursions and observations were confined wholly to the sea-coast, it is not to be expected that they could know much of the animals or vegetables of the country. Except musk-shoes, there are few other insects; but reptiles, but lizards.

In the morning of Monday the 26th of October, they put to sea from Samganoodha harbour; and as the wind was Southerly, stood away to the Westward.

Their intention was now to proceed to the Sandwich Islands, there to spend a few of the winter months, in case they should meet with the necessary refreshments, and then to direct their course to Kamtschatka, so as to endeavour to be there by the middle of May the ensuing summer.

On Monday the 2d of November, the wind veered to the Southward; and, before night, blew a violent storm, which obliged them to bring to. The Discovery fired several guns, which were answered; but without knowing on what occasion they were fired.

In the afternoon of the 7th, Captain Clerke came on board, and informed them of a melancholy accident that happened on board his ship, the second night after they left Samganoodha. The main tack gave way, killed one man, and wounded the boatswain, and two or three more. In addition to this misfortune, on the evening of the third, his sails and rigging received considerable damage; the guns which had been fired, were signals to bring to.

On the 26th, early in the morning, land was seen extending from South South East to West; from this it was evident that the Sandwich Islands were but imperfectly discovered.

About noon, some canoes came off from the shore. They were found to be of the same nation with the inhabitants of the islands more to leeward; it was pretty evident they knew of their having been there.

They got from their visitors a quantity of cuttle-fish, for nails and pieces of iron. They brought very little fruit and roots; but said they had plenty of them on their island, as also hogs and fowls. In the morning only a few visited them; but about noon they had the company of a good many, who brought with them bread-fruit, potatoes, taro, or eddy roots, a few plantains, and small pigs; all of which they exchanged for nails and iron tools. Trading continued till four o'clock in the afternoon, when, having disposed of all their cargoes, and not seeming inclined to fetch more, the ships left them. On the

101
Ou
to S
it,
Nor
fury
hee
som
fir
prev
was
ship
han
and
the
view
H
a fr
Cap
neral
the
cont
mate
were
of no
the i
their
" "
thou
is su
Both
cond
com
nove
than
had
men
all n
C

all the things a boat like this is used for the
all the things a boat like this is used for the

10th of November they discovered another island, called *Owhyhee*.

This island extended the next morning from South East to South West. Finding they could fetch it, they stood for it, and at seven in the evening were close up with the North side of it. In the morning of the 2d, they were surpris'd to see the summits of the mountains on *Owhyhee* covered with snow. As they drew near the shore, some of the natives came off. They were a little shy at first; but they were soon enticed on board; and at last prevail'd upon to return to the island, and bring off what was wanted. Soon after these reached the shore, the ships had company enough; and few coming empty-handed, they got a tolerable supply of small pigs, fruit, and roots. They continued trading with them till six in the evening; when they made sail, and stood off, with a view of plying to windward round the island.

Having procur'd a quantity of sugar cane, and finding a strong decoction of it produc'd a very palatable beer, Captain Cook order'd some more to be brew'd for general use. But when the cask was broach'd, not one of the crew would even so much as taste it. The officers continued to make use of it, whenever they could get materials for brewing it. A few hops, of which there were some on board, improv'd it much. It has the taste of new malt beer, and is no doubt very wholesome. Yet the inconsiderate crew alledg'd, that it was injurious to their health. Upon this subject Captain Cook says,

“ Every innovation whatever on board a ship, though ever so much to the advantage of seamen, is sure to meet with their highest disapprobation. Both portable soup, and sour kroust, were, at first, condemn'd as stuff unfit for human beings. Few commanders have introduc'd into their ships more novelties, as useful varieties of food and drink, than I have done. Indeed, few commanders have had the same opportunities of trying such experiments, or been driven to the same necessity of trying

On this island, a short time after, as appears by the narrative, Captain Cook lost his life.

ing them. It has, however, been, in a great measure, owing to various little deviations from established practice, that I have been able to preserve my people, generally speaking, from that dreadful distemper, the scurvy, which has, perhaps, destroyed more of our sailors, in their peaceful voyages, than have fallen by the enemy in their military expeditions.

They kept at some distance from the coast, till the 17th, when they stood in again, six leagues farther to windward than they had as yet reached.

In the afternoon of the 20th, some of the natives came off in their canoes, bringing with them a few pigs and plantains. They continued trading with the people till four in the afternoon; when, having got a pretty good supply, they made sail, and stretched off to the Northward.

The behaviour of these people was quite free from reserve, more so than had been before experienced in any of the other islands. It was very common for them to send up into the ship the several articles they brought off for barter; afterward, they would come in themselves, and make their bargains on the quarter-deck. The people of Otaheite, even after their repeated visits, did not care to put so much confidence in them.

At four in the afternoon, after purchasing every thing that the natives had brought off, they made sail, and stretched to the North, with the wind at East North East. At six in the evening, the Southernmost extreme of the island bore South West, the nearest shore seven or eight miles distant; so that they had now succeeded in getting to the windward of the island, which they had aimed at with so much perseverance.

Before day-break, the atmosphere was again loaded with heavy clouds; and the new year was ushered in with very hard rain, which continued at intervals, till past ten o'clock. They lay-to, trading with the inhabitants, till three o'clock in the afternoon; when having a tolerable supply, they made sail.

The three following days were spent in running down the South East side of the island.

O
of th
habi
wom
com
serve
view
part
capa
been
pres
in th
T
the l
his n
the t
hunc
they
join
on b
infor
they
of th
he h
had
rem
ship
T
C
a fir
part
alre
kep
root
thei
T
Nor
abu
A
a b
to e
Ca

On the 5th in the morning, they passed the South point of the island. Here stands a pretty large village, the inhabitants of which thronged off to the ship with hogs and women. It was not possible to keep the latter from coming on board; and no women could well be left reserved. Indeed, it appeared, that they came with no other view, than to make a surrender of their persons. This part of the country, from its appearance, did not seem capable of affording any vegetables. Marks of its having been laid waste by the explosion of a *volcano*, every where presented themselves: the devastation that it had made, in this neighbourhood, was visible to the naked eye.

The next morning, being near the shore, Mr. Bligh, the Master, was sent in a boat to sound the coast. Upon his return, he reported, that, at two cables length from the shore, he had found no soundings with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms. The Discovery, from which they had been separated above seven nights before, now joined them; a circumstance which gave great pleasure on both sides. Captain Clerke then coming on board, informed them that he had cruised four or five days where they were separated, and then plied round the East side of the island; but that, meeting with unfavourable winds, he had been carried to some distance from the coast. He had one of the islanders on board, all this time; who had remained there from choice, and had refused to quit the ship, though opportunities had offered.

The 8th and 9th they spent, as usual, standing off and on.

On the 11th, many canoes came along-side, but had not a single thing to barter; which proved clearly that this part of the island must be very poor, and that they had already parted with what they could spare. The ships kept plying off and on the 12th, and for want of fruit or roots were under a necessity of making use of some of their sea provisions.

The weather being fine, on the 15th they steered to the Northward. They had plenty of company this day, and abundance of every thing.

At day-break on the 16th, seeing the appearance of a bay, Mr. Bligh was sent with a boat from each ship to examine it, being at the same time three leagues off. Canoes now began to arrive from all parts; so that before
ten

ten o'clock, there were not fewer than a thousand about the two ships, most of them crowded with people, and well laden with hogs, and other productions of the island. One of their visitors took out of the ship a boat's rudder. He was discovered, but too late to recover it. Captain Cook thought this a good opportunity to shew these people the use of fire-arms; and two or three musquets, and as many four-pounders, were fired over the canoe which carried off the rudder. As it was not intended that any of the shot should take effect, the surrounding multitude of natives seemed rather more surprised than frightened.

In the evening, Mr. Bligh returned, and reported, that he had found a bay in which was a good anchorage, and fresh water. Here it was resolved to carry the ships, to rest, and supply themselves with every refreshment the place could afford. Numbers of the inhabitants requested permission to sleep on board. Curiosity was not the only motive, at least with some; for the next morning, several things were missing.

At eleven o'clock in the forenoon they anchored in the bay, which is called by the natives *Karakakooa*. The ships continued to be much crowded with natives, and were surrounded by a multitude of canoes. So many people were never seen together in the course of this voyage. Besides those in canoes, all the shore was covered with spectators, and many hundreds were swimming round the ship like shoals of fish. They were much struck with the singularity of the scene; few now lamented their having failed in their endeavours to find a Northern passage homeward last summer, as to this disappointment they were indebted for revisiting the Sandwich Isles, by which they have enriched their voyage with a discovery; which, though the last, seems to be the most important that had hitherto been made in the Pacific Ocean.

§ The unhappy circumstance which closed the transactions at this place, will ever make the remembrance of its discovery a matter to be lamented.

ten o'clock there were not fewer than a thousand about the wharves, most of them crowded with people, and well laden with boxes and other productions of the island. One of their visitors took out of the ship's hold a redder. He was discovered, but he failed to recover it. Captain Cook thought this a good opportunity to show these people the use of fire-arms; and two of them happened, and as many four-pounders were fired over the canoe which came off the redder. As it was not intended that any of the shot should take effect, the commanding multitude of natives formed at that time, and they were frightened.

In the evening, at 5 o'clock, the wind changed, and a heavy rain fell. The water was so high that it was necessary to leave the ship to rest, and supply the natives with every refreshment they could afford. The natives were so much pleased with the attention to their wants, that they were not the only natives at that time, as they were in the morning, that they were invited to the ship.

The CONTINUATION
 Is the Production of

CAPTAIN KING.

The natives were so much pleased with the attention to their wants, that they were not the only natives at that time, as they were in the morning, that they were invited to the ship.

VITAE

Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

Here
we
as
as t

Trans

KA
in dep
the dis
to Cap
lay in
they n
As t
chorin
numbe
shoutin
vagan
of both
and a
been a
shoals
remain
Amo
lution,
soon di
senting
he was
at tha

* Th
tion; b
could n

P A R T V.

Here Captain King took up his pen, from whose account we will endeavour to lay before our readers such parts as are most interesting, and entertaining, and as fully as this compendious account will admit.

Transactions on returning to the Sandwich Islands, from January, 1779, to March following.

KARAKAKOOA Bay is situated on the West side of the Island of Owhyhee. It is about a mile in depth, and bounded by two low points of land, at the distance of half a league. This place appearing to Captain Cook a proper place to refit the ships, and lay in an additional supply of water and provisions, they moored on the North side.

As soon as the inhabitants perceived the ships anchoring, they came off from the shore in astonishing numbers, and expressed their joy by singing and shouting, and exhibiting a variety of wild and extravagant gestures. The sides, the decks, and rigging of both ships were soon completely covered with them; and a multitude of women and boys, who had not been able to get canoes, came swimming round us in shoals; many of whom, not finding room on board, remained the whole day playing in the water.

Among the Chiefs that came on board the Resolution, was a young man, called Pareca, who was soon discovered to be a man of consequence. On presenting himself to Captain Cook, he told him, that he was *Takane* * to the king of the island, who was at that time engaged on a military expedition at

T

Mowee,

* They afterward met with several others of the same denomination; but whether it be an office, or some degree of affinity, they could never learn with certainty.

Mowee, and was expected to return within three or four days. A few presents from Captain Cook attached him entirely, and he became exceedingly useful in the management of his countrymen, as was afterwards experienced to some purpose, for the ships had not been long at anchor, when it was observed that the Discovery had such a number of people hanging on one side, as occasioned her to heel considerably; and that the men were unable to keep off the crowds which continued pressing into her. Captain Cook mentioned the inconvenience to Pareea, who immediately cleared the ship of its incumbrances, and drove away the canoes that surrounded her.

The authority of the Chiefs over the inferior people appeared, from this incident, to be of the most despotic kind. A similar instance of it happened the same day on board the Resolution; where the crowd being so great, as to impede the necessary business of the ship, they were obliged to have recourse to the assistance of Kaneena, another of their Chiefs, who had likewise attached himself to Captain Cook. The inconvenience we laboured under being made known, he immediately ordered his countrymen to quit the vessel; and we were not a little surprized to see them jump over board, without a moment's hesitation; all except one man, who loitering behind, and shewing some unwillingness to obey, Kaneena took him up in his arms, and threw him into the sea.

Both these Chiefs were men of strong and well proportioned bodies, and of countenances remarkably pleasing, Kaneena especially.

The inhabitants had hitherto behaved with great fairness and honesty, but the case was now exceedingly altered. The immense crowd of islanders, which blocked up every part of the ships, afforded frequent opportunity of pilfering without risk of discovery. Another circumstance, to which this alteration in their behaviour might be attributed, was the encouragement of their chiefs; for generally tracing the booty into the possession of some men of consequence, there was the strongest reason to suspect that these depredations were committed at their instigation.

S
Parc
nam
been
a lit
exce
a wh
use
proa
threw
he h
pace
he h
that
W
Capt
befor
the i
on to
even
Capt
lande
who
befor
in wh
The
retire
few l
the a
TH
is a s
twent
flat,
on wh
ficed
* Ca
Owhyh
they ap
vens.
great r
Delai
† F
to that

Soon after the Resolution had got into her station, Parcea and Kaneena brought on board a third Chief, named Koah, who, they said, was a priest, and had been, in his youth, a distinguished warrior. He was a little old man, of an emaciated figure; his eyes exceedingly sore and red, and his body covered with a white leprous scurf, the effects of an immoderate use of the kava. Being led into the cabin, he approached Captain Cook with great veneration, and threw over his shoulders a piece of red cloth, which he had brought along with him. Then stepping a few paces back, he made an offering of a small pig, which he held in his hand, whilst he pronounced a discourse that lasted for a considerable time.

When this ceremony was over, Koah dined with Captain Cook, eating plentifully of what was set before him; but, like the rest of the inhabitants of the islands in these seas, could scarcely be prevailed on to taste a second time the wine or spirits. In the evening, Captain Cook, attended by Mr Bayly and Captain King, † accompanied him on shore. They landed at the beach, and were received by four men, who carried wands tipped with dog's hair, and marched before, pronouncing with a loud voice a short sentence, in which we could only distinguish the word *Orono*. * The crowd, which had been collected on the shore, retired; and not a person was to be seen, except a few lying prostrate on the ground, near the huts of the adjoining village.

The Morai, or burying place, on the side of the beach, is a square solid pile of stones, about forty yards long, twenty broad, and fourteen in height. The top was flat, and well paved, and surrounded by a wooden rail, on which were fixed the skulls of the captives, sacrificed on the death of their Chiefs. In the centre of

T 2

the

* Captain Cook generally went by this name amongst the natives of Owhyhee; but we could never learn its precise meaning. Sometimes they applied it to an invisible being, who, they said, lived in the heavens. We also found that it was a title belonging to a personage of great rank and power in the island, who resembles pretty much the Delai Lama of the Tartars, and the ecclesiastical Emperor of Japan.

† From this time he is styled Captain King, but he did not succeed to that appointment 'till after Captain Clerke's death.

the area, stood a ruinous old building of wood, connected with the rail, on each side, by a stone wall, which divided the whole space into two parts. On the side next the country, were five poles, upwards of twenty feet high, supporting an irregular kind of scaffold; on the opposite side, towards the sea, stood two small houses, with a covered communication.

Upon this pile they perform their sacrifices, of some of which Captain Cook, Captain King, and other principal persons, were spectators.

After partaking of an entertainment which was rather disgusting to our guests, they were ushered back to the boat with the same attendants that accompanied them when they landed.—They immediately went on board.

The next morning, Captain King went on shore with a guard of eight marines, including the corporal and lieutenant, having orders to erect the observatory in such a situation as might best enable him to superintend and protect the waterers, and the other working parties that were to be on shore. As they were viewing a spot conveniently situated for this purpose, in the middle of the village, Pareea, who was always ready to shew both his power and his good will, offered to pull down some houses that would have obstructed their observations. However, they thought proper to decline this offer, and fixed on a field of sweet potatoes adjoining to the *Morai*, which was readily granted, and the priests, to prevent the intrusion of the natives, immediately consecrated or *tabooed* the place, by fixing their wands round the wall by which it was inclosed.

No canoes ever presumed to land near them; the natives sat on the wall, but none offered to come within the *tabooed* place, till he had obtained permission. But though the men, when requested, would come across the field with provisions, yet, nothing could prevail on the women to approach. Presents were tried, but without effect; Pareea and Koah were tempted to bring them, but in vain; they were invariably answered, that the *Eatooa* and *Terreoboo* (which was the name of their king) would kill them. This circumstance afforded no small matter of amusement

ment
and
thith
the v
sary o
three
into t
ming
admit

From
went
other
work
carefu
hogs
princ

The
before
bitati
tenda
huts
round
rated
and g
On a
stance

On
sacred
of Or
of a
the M
Kairee
offerin
a fire
and a
fented
Capta
coa-nu
The ka
hog, r
The
confine
on sho

ment to those on board, where the crowds of people, and particularly of women, that continued to flock thither, obliged them almost every hour to clear the vessel, in order to have room to do the necessary duties of the ship. On these occasions, two or three hundred women were frequently made to jump into the water at once, where they continued swimming and playing about, till they could again procure admittance.

From the 19th to the 24th, when Pareea and Koah went to attend Terrecoboo, who had landed on some other part of the island, the caulkers were set to work on the sides of the ships, and the rigging was carefully overhauled and repaired. The salting of hogs for sea-store was also a constant, and one of the principal objects of Captain Cook's attention.

They had not been long settled at the observatory, before they discovered, in the neighbourhood, the habitations of a society of priests, whose regular attendance at the *Morai* had excited curiosity. Their huts stood round a pond of water, and were surrounded by a grove of cocoa-nut trees, which separated them from the beach and the rest of the village, and gave the place an air of religious retirement. On acquainting Captain Cook with these circumstances, he resolved to pay them a visit.

On his arrival at the beach, he was conducted to a sacred building called *Harre-no-Orono*, or the house of *Orono*, and seated before the entrance, at the foot of a wooden idol, of the same kind with those on the *Morai*; and, after wrapping him in a red cloth, Kaireekee, accompanied by twelve priests, made an offering of a pig. The pig was then strangled, and a fire being kindled, it was thrown into the embers, and after the hair was singed off, it was again presented; it was then held for a short time under the Captain's nose; after which it was laid, with a cocoa-nut, at his feet, and the performers sat down. The *kava* was then brewed, and handed round; a fat hog, ready dressed, was brought in.

The civilities of this society were not, however, confined to mere ceremony and parade. The party on shore, received from them, every day, a constant

stant supply of hogs and vegetables, more than sufficient for their subsistence; and several canoes loaded with provisions were sent to the ships with the same punctuality. No return was ever demanded, or even hinted at in the most distant manner. Their presents were made with a regularity, more like the discharge of a religious duty, than the effect of mere liberality; and when enquiry was made at whose charge all this munificence was displayed, they were told, it was at the expence of a great man called Kaoo, the chief of the priests, and grandfather to Kaireekkea, who was at that time absent attending the King of the island.

As every thing relating to the character and behaviour of this people must be interesting to the reader, on account of the tragedy that was afterwards acted here, it will be proper to acquaint him, that they had not always so much reason to be satisfied with the conduct of the warrior-Chiefs, or *Earees*, as with that of the priests. In all their dealings with the former, they were found sufficiently attentive to their own interests; and besides their habit of stealing, which may admit of some excuse, from the universality of the practice among the islanders of these seas, they made use of other artifices equally dishonourable. One instance, in which they discovered, with regret, their friend Koah to be a party principally concerned. As the Chiefs, who brought presents of hogs, were always sent back handsomely rewarded, they had generally a greater supply than could be made use of. On these occasions, Koah, who never failed in his attendance, used to beg such as were not wanted, and they were always given to him. It one day happened, that a pig was presented by a man whom Koah himself introduced as a Chief, who was desirous of paying his respects; the pig was recollected to be the same that had been given to Koah just before. This creating suspicion of some trick, it was found on further enquiry, that the pretended Chief was an ordinary person; and on connecting this with other circumstances, there was reason to suspect, that it was not the first time they had been the dupes of the like imposition.

Things

Thin
they we
were suf
tives kep
pense, t
intercou
arrival o
acciden
obliged
vegetab
deavour
the nati
were at
attempt
mediate
which h
soon aft

The
canoe; a
lage, a
Their
first cano
their ric
with lon
venerabl
brethren
These i
wicker v
of vario
their clo
oysters,
mouths
dogs, an
were str
with ho
went alo
hymns
round th
pected,
where th

As fo
out a l
ing that

Things continued in this state till the 24th, when they were a good deal surprized to find that no canoes were suffered to put off from the shore, and that the natives kept close to their houses. After several hours suspense, they learned that the bay was *tabooed*, and all intercourse with them interdicted, on account of the arrival of Terreeoboo. As they had not foreseen an accident of this sort, the crews of both ships were obliged to pass the day without their usual supply of vegetables. The next morning, therefore, they endeavoured, both by threats and promises, to induce the natives to come along-side; and as some of them were at last venturing to put off, a Chief was observed attempting to drive them away. A musquet was immediately fired over his head, to make him desist, which had the desired effect, and refreshments were soon after purchased as usual.

The next day, about noon, the King, in a large canoe, attended by two others, set out from the village, and paddled toward the ships in great state. Their appearance was grand and magnificent. In the first canoe was Terreeoboo and his Chiefs, dressed in their rich feathered cloaks and helmets, and armed with long spears and daggers; in the second came the venerable Kaoo, the chief of the priests, and his brethren, with their idols displayed on red cloth. These idols were busts of a gigantic size, made of wicker work, and curiously covered with small feathers of various colours, wrought in the same manner with their cloaks. Their eyes were made of large pearl oysters, with a black nut fixed in the centre; their mouths were set with a double row of the fangs of dogs, and, together with the rest of their features, were strangely distorted. The third canoe was filled with hogs and various sorts of vegetables. As they went along, the priests in the centre canoe sung their hymns with great solemnity; and after paddling round the ships, instead of going on board, as was expected, they made toward the shore at the beach where the observatory was erected.

As soon as they were seen, Captain Cook ordered out a little guard to receive the King; and perceiving that he was going on shore, followed him, and arrived

arrived nearly at the same time. They were conducted into the tent, where they had scarcely been seated, when the King rose up, and in a very graceful manner threw over the Captains shoulders the cloak he himself wore, put a feathered helmet upon his head, and a curious fan into his hand. He also spread at his feet five or six other cloaks, all exceedingly beautiful, and of the greatest value. His attendants then brought four very large hogs, with sugar-canes, cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit; and this part of the ceremony was concluded by the King's exchanging names with Captain Cook, which amongst all the islanders of the Pacific Ocean, is esteemed the strongest pledge of friendship. A procession of priests, with a venerable old personage at their head, now appeared, followed by a long train of men leading large hogs, and others carrying plantains, sweet potatoes, &c. By the looks and gestures of Kaireckeea, he was known to be the chief of the priests before mentioned, on whose bounty they had so long subsisted. He had a piece of red cloth in his hands, which he wrapped round Captain Cook's shoulders, and afterwards presented him with a small pig.

As soon as the formalities of the meeting were over, Captain Cook carried Terreeboo, and as many chiefs as the pinnace could hold, on board the Resolution. They were received with every mark of respect that could be shewn them; and Captain Cook, in return for the feathered cloak, put a linen shirt on the King, and girt his own hanger round him. The ancient Kaoo, and about half a dozen more old Chiefs, remained on shore, and took up their abode at the priests houses. During all this time not a canoe was seen in the bay, and the natives either kept within their huts, or lay prostrate on the ground. Before the King left the Resolution, Capt. Cook obtained leave for the natives to come and trade with the ships as usual.

The quiet and inoffensive behaviour of the natives having taken away every apprehension of danger, the officers of both ships went daily up the country, in small parties, or even singly, and frequently remained out the whole night. It would be endless to

recount

recount
they re
went,
every
their se
practise
parture
walked
every of
for danc
The
hospital
that pro
mon wi
of their
under t
sheathin
means d
end of
was fire
reach by
fore sou
one of

On t
fined h
reecoboo
received
away,
and as
sume in

They
which
long sp
the up
standar
ous col
birds,
were re
judges,
They c
high be
As they
from h

recount all the instances of kindness and civility which they received upon those occasions. Wherever they went, the people flocked about them eager to offer every assistance in their power, and highly gratified if their services were accepted. Various little arts were practised to attract their notice, or to delay their departure. The boys and girls ran before them as they walked through their villages, and stopped them at every opening, where there was room to form a group for dancing.

The satisfaction derived from their gentleness and hospitality, was, however, frequently interrupted by that propensity to stealing, which they have in common with all the other islanders of these seas. Some of their most expert swimmers were one day discovered under the ships, drawing out the filling nails of the sheathing, which they performed very dexterously by means of a short stick, with a flint stone fixed in the end of it. To put a stop to this practice, small shot was fired at the offenders; but they easily got out of reach by diving under the ships bottom. It was therefore found necessary to make an example, by flogging one of them on board the Discovery.

On the 28th, Captain Clerke, whose ill health confined him, for the most part, on board, paid Terceoboo his first visit, at his hut on shore. He was received with great formality; and, on his coming away, he received a present of thirty large hogs, and as much fruit and roots as his crew could consume in a week.

They were entertained with a boxing match, at which a vast concourse of people were present. A long space was left vacant in the midst of them, at the upper end of which sat the judges, under three standards, from which hung slips of cloth of various colours, the skins of two wild geese, a few small birds, and bunches of feathers. When the sports were ready to begin, the signal was given by the judges, and immediately two combatants appeared. They came forward slowly, lifting up their feet very high behind, and drawing their hands along the soles. As they approached, they frequently eyed each other from head to foot, in a contemptuous manner, cast-

ing

ing several arch looks at the spectators, straining their muscles, and using a variety of affected gestures. Being advanced within reach of each other, they stood with both arms held out straight before their faces, at which part all their blows were aimed. They struck, in an awkward manner, with a full swing of the arm; made no attempt to parry, but eluded their adversary's attack by an inclination of the body, or by retreating. The battle was quickly decided; for if either of them was knocked down, or even fell by accident, he was considered as vanquished, and the victor expressed his triumph by a variety of gestures, which usually excited, as was intended, a loud laugh among the spectators. He then waited for a second antagonist; and if again victorious, for a third, till he was, at last, in his turn defeated.

This day died William Watman, a seaman of the gunner's crew; a similar event of which had hitherto been very rare. He was an old man, and much respected on account of his attachment to Captain Cook. He had formerly served as a marine twenty-one years; after which he entered as a seaman on board the *Resolution* in 1772, and served with Captain Cook in his voyage toward the South Pole. At their return, he was admitted into Greenwich Hospital, through the Captain's interest, at the same time with himself; and being resolved to follow throughout the fortunes of his benefactor, he also quitted it along with him, on his being appointed to the command of the present expedition.

At the request of the King of the Island, he was buried on the *Morai*, and the ceremony was performed with as much solemnity as our situation permitted. Old Kaoo and his brethren were spectators, and preserved the most profound silence and attention, whilst the service was reading. When they began to fill up the grave, they approached it with great reverence, threw in a dead pig, some coconuts, and plaintains; and, for three nights afterward, they surrounded it, sacrificing hogs, and performing their usual ceremonies of hymns and prayers, which continued till day-break.

At the
they nail
was inscri
the day
move; a
ferred to
it is ma

The sh
purchase
the rail
the sailo
served ca
done in
shewn an
assisted t
to speak
indifferen

Terre
past, bec
parture.
riosity to
of them,
cause an
enquiry
country
fit to the
bellies.
the crew
down to
to purch
led them
It was ri
and patt
tainly m
during t
partly b
for them
next bre
supply t
in the b
tion of
that the
telling

At

At the head of the grave was erected a post, and they nailed upon it a square piece of board, on which was inscribed the name of the deceased, his age, and the day of his death. This they promised not to remove; and we have no doubt, but that it will be suffered to remain, as long as the frail materials, of which it is made, will permit.

The ships being in great want of fuel, the Captain purchased of the priests on the second of February, the rail that surrounded the top of the *Movai*. Whilst the sailors were taking it away, one of them was observed carrying off a carved image. Though this was done in the presence of the natives, who had not shewn any mark of resentment at it, but had even assisted them in the removal, it was thought necessary to speak to Kaoo, on the subject; who appeared very indifferent about the matter.

Terreeoboo, and his Chiefs, had, for some days past, been very inquisitive about the time of their departure. This circumstance had excited a great curiosity to know, what opinion this people had formed of them, and what were their ideas respecting the cause and objects of the voyage. The result of the enquiry was that they imagined they came from some country where provisions had failed; and that their visit to them was merely for the purpose of filling their bellies. Indeed, the meagre appearance of some of the crew, the hearty appetites with which they sat down to their fresh provisions, and their great anxiety to purchase and carry off, as much as they were able, led them, naturally enough, to such a conclusion. It was ridiculous enough to see them stroaking the sides, and patting the bellies, of the sailors (who were certainly much improved in the sleekness of their looks, during their short stay in the island), and telling them, partly by signs, and partly by words, that it was time for them to go; but if they would come again the next bread-fruit season, they should be better able to supply their wants. They had now been sixteen days in the bay; and considering the enormous consumption of hogs and vegetables it need not be wondered, that they should wish to see them take leave. On telling Terreeoboo they should leave the island on the
next

next day but one, there was a sort of proclamation immediately made, through the villages, to require the people to bring in their hogs, and vegetables, for the King to present to the *Orono*, on his departure,

The next day being fixed for our departure, Terreeboo invited Captain Cook and Captain King to attend him, on the 3d, to the place where Kaoo resided. On their arrival, they found the ground covered with parcels of cloth; a vast quantity of red and yellow feathers, tied to the fibres of cocoa-nut hulk; and a great number of hatchets, and other pieces of iron-ware, that had been got in barter from us. At a little distance from these, lay an immense quantity of vegetables, of every kind, and near them was a very large herd of hogs. At first, it was supposed the whole was intended as a present to them till Kaireekea informed them that it was a gift, or tribute, from the people of that district to the king; and, accordingly as soon as they were seated, they brought all the bundles, and laid them severally at Terreeboo's feet; who gave all the hogs and vegetables, and two-thirds of the cloth, to the two Captains. They were astonished at the value and magnitude of this present, which far exceeded every thing of the kind they had seen, either at the Friendly or Society Islands.

The same day they quitted the *Morai*, and got the tents and astronomical instruments on board. And we had no sooner left the place, than the natives rushed in, and searched eagerly about, in expectation of finding something of value, that might have been left behind. The people were become so fond of Captain King, that they pressed him much to stay behind, and even solicited Captain Cook, whom they supposed his Father, to consent to his continuance amongst them.

On the 4th of February, they unmoored, and sailed out of the bay, with the *Discovery* in company, and were followed by a great number of canoes.

In the afternoon of the 7th, though the weather was still squally, they stood in for the land, and being about three leagues from it, they saw a canoe, with two men paddling towards them, which they immediately conjectured had been driven off the shore by the late boisterous weather, and therefore stopped

the

the ship
wretche
had not
weakne
they w
ropewh
difficult
with a
lashed
lain wit
had left
from th
caution
child b
men,
vered.

At m
which c
the 8th
had giv
to retur
ther bec
which th
mischief
During
windwar
of the b
dark, th
ing, wh
as befor
11th, a
mast, a
Besides
sustaine
having
holding
were lik
Mr. Kir
12th, a
with th
They re
priests.

the ship's way in order to take them in. These poor wretches were so entirely exhausted with fatigue, that had not one of the natives on board, observing their weakness, jumped into the canoe to their assistance, they would scarcely have been able to fasten it to the rope which was thrown out for that purpose. It was with difficulty they got them up the ship's side, together with a child, about four years old, which they had lashed under the thwarts of the canoe, where it had lain with only its head above water. They said they had left the shore the morning before, and had been from that time without food or water. The usual precautions were taken in giving them victuals, and the child being committed to the care of one of the women, they were all next morning perfectly recovered.

At midnight on the 7th, a gale of wind came on, which obliged them to double reef the topsails. On the 8th, at day-break, they found that the foremast had given way. This accident induced Captain Cook to return to Karakakooa bay. On the 10th, the weather became moderate, and a few canoes came off, from which they learnt, that the late storms had done much mischief, and that several large canoes had been lost. During the remainder of the day they kept beating to windward, and before night they were within a mile of the bay; but not choosing to run on while it was dark, they stood off and on till day-light next morning, when they dropt anchor nearly in the same place as before. They were employed the whole of the 11th, and part of the 12th, in getting out the foremast, and sending it with the carpenters on shore. Besides the damage which the head of the mast had sustained, the heel was found exceedingly rotten, having a large hole up the middle of it capable of holding four or five cocoa nuts. As these repairs were likely to take up several days, Mr. Bayly and Mr. King got the astronomical apparatus on shore the 12th, and pitched their tents on the *Morai*, having with them a guard of a corporal and six marines. They renewed their friendly correspondence with the priests. The sailmakers were sent on shore, to re-

pair

pair the damages which had taken place in their department during the late gales. They were lodged in a house adjoining to the *Morai* that was lent by the priests: such were their arrangements on shore.

Here commence the transactions that led to, and followed, in consequence of the fatal catastrophe of the 14th, which it has been thought best to convey to the reader in the words of Captain King.

Upon coming to anchor, we were surpris'd to find our reception very different from what it had been on our first arrival; no shouts, no bustle, no confusion; but a solitary bay, with only here and there a canoe stealing close along the shore. The impulse of curiosity, which had before operated to so great a degree, might now indeed be supposed to have ceased; but the hospitable treatment we had invariably met with, and the friendly footing on which we parted, gave us some reason to expect that they would again have flocked about us with great joy on our return.

We were forming various conjectures upon the occasion of this extraordinary appearance, when our anxiety was at length relieved by the return of a boat which had been sent on shore, and brought us word, that *Terreeboo* was absent, and had left the bay under the *taboo*. Though this account appeared very satisfactory to most of us; yet others were of opinion, or rather, perhaps, have been led by subsequent events to imagine, that there was something at this time very suspicious in the behaviour of the natives; and that the interdiction of all intercourse with us on pretence of the king's absence, was only to give him time to consult the Chiefs in what manner it might be proper to treat us. Whether these suspicions were well founded, or the account given by the natives was the truth,

we w
not in
they
of wh
make
yet th
on his
imme
sequen
interce
neithe
condu
In t
of and
which
before
fold a
price a
the m
vanced
and pu
laid on
it was
Chief.
very d
from th
as wel
quaint
formed
view,
have to
with t
amidst
may be
quence
may be
till the

we were never able to ascertain. For though it is not improbable, that our sudden return, for which they could see no apparent cause, and the necessity of which we afterwards found it very difficult to make them comprehend, might occasion some alarm; yet the unsuspecting conduct of Terreeoboo, who, on his supposed arrival, the next morning, came immediately to visit Captain Cook, and the consequent return of the natives to their former friendly intercourse with us, are strong proofs that they neither meant, nor apprehended, any change of conduct.

In support of this opinion, I may add the account of another accident, precisely of the same kind which happened to us, on our first visit, the day before the arrival of the King. A native had sold a hog on board the Resolution, and taken the price agreed on, when Pareea, passing by, advised the man not to part with the hog without an advanced price. For this, he was sharply spoken to, and pushed away; and the *taboo* being soon after laid on the bay, we had at first no doubt, but that it was in consequence of the offence given to the Chief. Both these accidents serve to shew, how very difficult it is to draw any certain conclusion from the actions of people, with whose customs, as well as language, we are so imperfectly acquainted; at the same time, some idea may be formed from them, of the difficulties, at the first view, perhaps not very apparent, which those have to encounter, who, in all their transactions with these strangers, have to steer their course amidst so much uncertainty, where a trifling error may be attended with even the most fatal consequences. However true or false our conjectures may be, things went on in their usual quiet course, till the afternoon of the 13th.

Towards the evening of that day, the officer who commanded the watering party of the Discovery, came to inform me, that several Chiefs had assembled at the well near the beach, driving away the natives, whom he had hired to assist the sailors in rolling down the casks to the shore. He told me, at the same time, that he thought their behaviour extremely suspicious, and that they meant to give him some farther disturbance. At his request, therefore, I sent a marine along with him, but suffered him to take only his side-arms. In a short time, the officer returned, and on his acquainting me, that the islanders had armed themselves with stones, and were grown very tumultuous, I went myself to the spot, attended by a marine, with his musquet. Seeing us approach, they threw away their stones, and, on my speaking to some of the Chiefs, the mob were driven away, and those who chose it, were suffered to assist in filling the casks. Having left things quiet here, I went to meet Captain Cook, whom I saw coming on shore in the pinnace. I related to him what had just passed; and he ordered me, in case of their beginning to throw stones, or behave insolently, immediately to fire a ball at the offenders. I accordingly gave orders to the corporal, to have the pieces of the sentinels loaded with ball, instead of small shot.

Soon after our return to the tents, we were alarmed by a continued fire of musquets from the Discovery, which we observed to be directed at a canoe, that we saw paddling towards the shore, in great haste, pursued by one of our small boats. We immediately concluded, that the firing was in consequence of some theft, and Captain Cook ordered me to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to seize the people as they came on shore. Accordingly, we ran towards the place
 where

who
 were
 mad
 riva
 V
 been
 ble,
 that
 to re
 ing
 the
 near
 miles
 tives
 were
 it in
 turn
 D
 rious
 offic
 was
 been
 gage
 duty
 the
 Pare
 on be
 man
 refus
 of th
 was
 with
 abou
 spect
 such
 with
 at fo
 imm

where we supposed the canoe would land, but were too late; the people having quitted it, and made their escape into the country before our arrival.

We were at this time ignorant, that the goods had been already restored; and as we thought it probable, from the circumstances we had at first observed, that they might be of importance, were unwilling to relinquish our hopes of recovering them. Having therefore inquired of the natives, which way the people had fled, we followed them; till it was near dark, when judging ourselves to be about three miles from the tents, and suspecting, that the natives, who frequently encouraged us in the pursuit, were amusing us with false information, we thought it in vain to continue our search any longer, and returned to the beach.

During our absence, a difference of a more serious and unpleasant nature, had happened. The officer, who had been sent in the small boat, and was returning on board, with the goods which had been restored, observing Captain Cook and me engaged in the pursuit of the offenders, thought it his duty to seize the canoe, which was left drawn up on the shore. Unfortunately, this canoe belonged to Pareea, who arriving, at the same moment, from on board the *Discovery*, claimed his property, with many protestations of his innocence. The officer refusing to give it up, and being joined by the crew of the pinnace, a scuffle ensued, in which Pareea was knocked down, by a violent blow on his head, with an oar. The natives, who were collected about the spot, and had hitherto been peaceable spectators, immediately attacked our people with such a shower of stones, as forced them to retreat, with great precipitation, and swim off to a rock, at some distance from the shore. The pinnace was immediately ransacked by the islanders; and, but

for the timely interposition of Pareea, who seemed to have recovered from the blow, and forgot it at the same instant, would soon have been entirely demolished. Having driven away the crowd, he made signs to our people, that they might come and take possession of the pinnacle, and that he would endeavour to get back the things which had been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, with a midshipman's cap, and some other trifling articles of the plunder, and, with much apparent concern at what had happened, asked, if the *Orono* would kill him, and whether he would permit him to come on board the next day? On being assured, that he should be well received, he joined noses (as their custom is) with the officers, in token of friendship, and paddled over to the village of Kowrowa.

When Captain Cook was informed of what had passed, he expressed much uneasiness at it, and as we were returning on board, "I am afraid," said he, "that these people will oblige me to use some violent measures; for (he added) they must not be left to imagine, that they have gained an advantage over us." However, as it was too late to take any steps this evening, he contented himself with giving orders, that every man and woman on board should be immediately turned out of the ship. As soon as this order was executed, I returned on shore; and our former confidence in the natives being much now abated, by the events of the day, I posted a double guard on the *Morai*, with orders to call me, if they saw any men lurking about the beach. At about eleven o'clock, five islanders were observed creeping round the bottom of the *Morai*; they seemed very cautious in approaching us, and, at last, finding themselves discovered, retired out of sight. About midnight, one of them venturing up close to the observatory, the sentinel fired over him; on
which

which
of the
Nex
on boar
my wa
ed, tha
from th

Whe
arming
relled g
happen
some ea
of the
ons he
usual p
was lof
the Kir
and to
This n
with su
occasio
to stop
the bay
ing th
peaceab
ships w
the bay
guns h
attemp
It w
quitted
nace, l
him; a
I recei
natives
they sh
ther; a
the C

which the men fled, and we passed the remainder of the night without farther disturbance.

Next morning, the 14th, at day-light, I went on board the *Resolution* for the time-keeper, and, in my way, was hailed by the *Discovery*, and informed, that their cutter had been stolen, during the night, from the buoy where it was moored.

When I arrived on board, I found the marines arming, and Captain Cook loading his double-barrelled gun. Whilst I was relating to him what had happened to us in the night, he interrupted me with some eagerness, and acquainted me with the loss of the *Discovery's* cutter, and with the preparations he was making for its recovery. It had been his usual practice, whenever any thing of consequence was lost, at any of the islands in this ocean, to get the King, or some of the principal *Erees*, on board, and to keep them as hostages, till it was restored. This method, which had been always attended with success, he meant to pursue on the present occasion; and, at the same time, had given orders to stop all the canoes that should attempt to leave the bay, with an intention of seizing and destroying them, if he could not recover the cutter by peaceable means. Accordingly, the boats of both ships well manned and armed, were stationed across the bay; and, before I left the ship, some great guns had been fired at two large canoes, that were attempting to make their escape.

It was between seven and eight o'clock when we quitted the ship together; Captain Cook in the pinnace, having Mr. Phillips, and nine marines with him; and myself in the small boat. The last orders I received from him were, to quiet the minds of the natives, on our side of the bay, by assuring them, they should not be hurt; to keep my people together; and to be on my guard. We then parted; the Captain went toward Kowrowa, where the
King

King resided; and I proceeded to the beach. My first care, on going ashore, was to give strict orders to the marines to remain within the tent, to load their pieces with ball, and not to quit their arms. Afterward I took a walk to the huts of old Kaoo, and the priests, and explained to them, as well as I could, the object of the hostile preparations, which had exceedingly alarmed them. I found, that they had already heard of the cutter's being stolen, and I assured them, that though Captain Cook was resolved to recover it, and to punish the authors of the theft, yet that they, and the people of the village on our side, need not be under the smallest apprehension of suffering any evil from us. I desired the priests to explain this to the people, and to tell them not to be alarmed, but to continue peaceable and quiet. Kaoo asked me, with great earnestness, if Terreoboo was to be hurt; I assured him, he was not; and both he and the rest of his brethren seemed much satisfied with this assurance.

In the mean time, Captain Cook, having called off the launch, which was stationed at the North point of the bay, and taken it along with him, proceeded to Towrowa, and landed with the Lieutenant and nine marines. He immediately marched into the village, where he was received with the usual marks of respect; the people prostrating themselves before him, and bringing their accustomed offerings of small hogs. Finding that there was no suspicion of his design, his next step was, to inquire for Terreoboo, and the two boys, his sons, who had been his constant guests on board the Resolution. In a short time, the boys returned along with the natives, who had been sent in search of them, and immediately led Captain Cook to the House where the King had slept. They found the old man just awoke from sleep; and, after a short conversation about the loss of the cutter, from which Captain
Cook

Cook w
it, he i
the day
the Kin
to acco

Thin
boys be
the part
an elder
ther of
wives,
entreati
the same
her, lai
go no f
tives, w
along th
the firm
hostility

Cook an
tenant
huddled
capable
require
up along
and the
they we
about th
was sittin

All th
with the
his coun
abandon
continue
to proce
the Kin
Chiefs v
with pra

Cook was convinced that he was in nowise privy to it, he invited him to return in the boat, and spend the day on board the Resolution. To this proposal the King readily consented, and immediately got up to accompany him.

Things were in this prosperous train, the two boys being already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party having advanced near the water-side, when an elderly woman called Kanee-kabareea, the mother of the boys, and one of the King's favorite wives, came after him, and with many tears and entreaties besought him not to go on board. At the same time, two Chiefs, who came along with her, laid hold of him, and insisting that he should go no farther, forced him to sit down. The natives, who were collecting in prodigious numbers along the shore, and had probably been alarmed by the firing of the great guns, and the appearances of hostility in the bay, began to throng round Captain Cook and their King. In this situation, the Lieutenant of marines observing that his men were huddled close together in the crowd, and thus incapable of using their arms if any occasion should require it, proposed to the Captain to draw them up along the rocks close to the water's edge; and the crowd readily making way for them to pass, they were drawn up in a line, at the distance of about thirty yards from the place where the King was sitting.

All this time the old King remained on the ground, with the strongest marks of terror and dejection in his countenance; Captain Cook, not willing to abandon the object for which he had come on shore, continued to urge him in the most pressing manner to proceed; whilst, on the other hand, whenever the King appeared inclined to follow him, the Chiefs who stood round him interposed, at first with prayers and entreaties, but afterwards having recourse

recourse to force and violence, insisted on his staying where he was. Captain Cook therefore finding that the alarm had spread too generally, and that it was in vain to think any longer of getting him off without bloodshed, at last gave up the point; observing to Mr. Phillips, that it would be impossible to compel him to go on board without the risk of killing a great number of the inhabitants.

Though the enterprize which had carried Captain Cook on shore had now failed and was abandoned, yet his person did not appear to have been in the least danger, till an accident happened which gave a fatal turn to the affair. The boats, which had been stationed across the bay, having fired at some canoes that were attempting to get out, unfortunately had killed a Chief of the first rank. The news of his death arrived at the village where Captain Cook was, just as he had left the King, and was walking slowly towards the shore. The ferment it occasioned was very conspicuous; the women and children were immediately sent off; and the men put on their war-mats, and armed themselves with spears and stones. One of the natives, having in his hands a stone and a long iron spike, (which they call a *pahoa*) came up to the Captain, flourishing his weapon by way of defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The Captain desired him to desist; but the man persisting in his insolence, he was at length provoked to fire a load of small shot. The man having his mat on, which the shot were not able to penetrate, this had no other effect than to irritate and encourage them. Several stones were thrown at the marines; and one of the *Erees* attempted to stab Mr. Phillips with his *pahoa*; but he failed in the attempt, and received from him a blow with the but end of his musquet. Captain Cook now fired his second barrel, loaded with ball, and killed one

of the fo
with stor
swered by
rines; an
contrary
fire with
time to re
ful shout
of the ut

Four
rocks in
of the
wounded
stab betw
fortunate
had wou
his blow
time he
water's e
firing, an
who wer
boat-mer
was desir
is not im
sion, pro
that whi
had offer
turned a
was stabl
the water
up a gr
dragged
who snat
shewed
destructio

Thus
After a l
enterpriz

of the foremost of the natives. A general attack with stones immediately followed, which was answered by a discharge of musquetry from the marines, and the people in the boats. The islanders, contrary to the expectations of every one, stood the fire with great firmness; and before the marines had time to reload, they broke in upon them with dreadful shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of the utmost horror and confusion.

Four of the marines were cut off amongst the rocks in their retreat, and fell a sacrifice to the fury of the enemy; three more were dangerously wounded; and the lieutenant, who had received a stab between the shoulders with a *pahoa*, having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man who had wounded him just as he was going to repeat his blow. Our unfortunate Commander, the last time he was seen distinctly, was standing at the water's edge, and calling out to the boats to cease firing, and to pull in. If it be true, as some of those who were present imagined, that the marines and boat-men had fired without his orders, and that he was desirous of preventing any further bloodshed, it is not improbable, that his humanity, on this occasion, proved fatal to him. For it was remarked, that whilst he faced the natives, none of them had offered him any violence, but that having turned about, to give his orders to the boats, he was stabbed in the back, and fell with his face into the water. On seeing him fall, the islanders set up a great shout, and his body was immediately dragged on shore, and surrounded by the enemy, who snatching the dagger out of each other's hands, shewed a savage eagerness to have a share in his destruction.

Thus fell our great and excellent Commander! After a life of so much distinguished and successful enterprize, his death, as far as regards himself, cannot

not be reckoned premature; since he lived to finish the great work for which he seems to have been designed; and was rather removed from the enjoyment, than cut off from the acquisition, of glory.

How sincerely his loss was felt and lamented, by those who had so long found their general security in his skill and conduct, and every consolation, under their hardships, in his tenderness and humanity, it is neither necessary nor possible for me to describe; much less shall I attempt to paint the horror with which we were struck, and the universal dejection and dismay, which followed so dreadful and unexpected a calamity.

It has been already related, that four of the marines who attended Captain Cook, were killed by the islanders on the spot. The rest, with Mr. Phillips, their Lieutenant, threw themselves into the water, and escaped, under cover of a smart fire from the boats. On this occasion, a remarkable instance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was shewn by that officer. For he had scarcely got into the boat, when, seeing one of the marines, who was a bad swimmer, struggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the enemy, he immediately jumped into the sea to his assistance, though much wounded himself; and after receiving a blow on the head from a stone, which had nearly sent him to the bottom, he caught the man by the hair, and brought him safe off.

Our people continued for some time to keep up a constant fire from the boats (which, during the whole transaction, were not more than twenty yards from the land,) in order to afford their unfortunate companions, if any of them should still remain alive, an opportunity of escaping. These efforts, seconded by a few guns, that were fired at the same time, from the Resolution, having forced the natives at last to retire, a small boat, manned by five

of

of our y
where t
life, lyi
to atten
and the
returned
the islan

As fo
news o
crews,
called to
sails we
rines.

tions o
transact
of the t
mile fr
distinct

where
heard th
ceive so
multitu
the boa
passing
must

Where

it was
both n
knew,

cess, i
seas, h
that I

moment
now s

might
from c

to it.

of our young midshipmen, pulled toward the shore, where they saw the bodies, without any signs of life, lying on the ground; but judging it dangerous to attempt to bring them off, with so small a force, and their ammunition being nearly expended, they returned to the ships, leaving them in possession of the islanders, together with ten stands of arms.

As soon as the general consternation, which the news of this calamity occasioned throughout both crews, had a little subsided, their attention was called to our party at the *Morai*, where the mast and sails were on shore, with a guard of only six marines. It is impossible for me to describe the emotions of my own mind, during the time these transactions had been carrying on, at the other side of the bay. Being at the distance only of a short mile from the village of Kowrowa, we could see distinctly an immense crowd collected on the spot where Captain Cook had just before landed. We heard the firing of the musquetry, and could perceive some extraordinary bustle and agitation in the multitude. We afterwards saw the natives flying, the boats retire from the shore, and passing and re-passing, in great stillness, between the ships. I must confess, that my heart soon misgave me. Where a life so dear and valuable was concerned, it was impossible not to be alarmed, by appearances both new and threatening. But, besides this, I knew, that a long and uninterrupted course of success, in his transactions with the natives of these seas, had given the Captain a degree of confidence, that I was always fearful might, at some unlucky moment, put him too much off his guard; and I now saw all the dangers to which that confidence might lead, without receiving much consolation from considering the experience that had given rise to it.

My first care, on hearing the musquets fired, was, to assure the people, who were assembled in considerable numbers, round the wall of our consecrated field, and seemed equally at a loss with ourselves how to account for what they had seen and heard, that they should not be molested; and that, at all events, I was desirous of continuing on peaceable terms with them. We remained in this posture till the boats had returned on board, when Captain Clerke, observing, through his telescope, that we were surrounded by the natives, and apprehending they meant to attack us, ordered two four-pounders to be fired at them. Fortunately these guns, though well aimed, did no mischief, and yet gave the natives a convincing proof of their power. One of the balls broke a cocoa nut tree in the middle, under which a party of them were sitting; and the other shivered a rock, that stood in an exact line with them. As I had, just before, given them the strongest assurances of their safety, I was exceedingly mortified at this act of hostility; and, to prevent a repetition of it, immediately dispatched a boat to acquaint Captain Clerke, that, at present, I was on the most friendly terms with the natives; and that, if occasion should hereafter arise for altering my conduct toward them, I would hoist a jack, as a signal for him to afford us all the assistance in his power.

We expected the return of the boat with the utmost impatience; and after remaining a quarter of an hour, under the most torturing anxiety and suspense, our fears were at length confirmed, by the arrival of Mr. *Bligh*, with orders to strike the tents as quickly as possible, and to send the sails, that were repairing, on board. Just at the same moment, our friend *Kaireekoa* having also received intelligence of the death of *Captain Cook*, from a native, who had arrived from the other side of the bay,

bay, ca
in his c
Our
and imp
event o
one of
mon da
and the
the pro
have be
not as y
yet it
which
might p
dissemb
and to
left eith
cessful
them to
this tim
At the
and the
was el
their sa
proceed
us, in
people
peace.

Have
Morai
post,
ing h
on the
in ord
gerou
the sp
with
before

bay, came to me, with great sorrow and dejection in his countenance, to enquire if it was true?

Our situation was, at this time extremely critical and important. Not only our own lives, but the event of the expedition, and the return of at least one of the ships, being involved in the same common danger. We had the mast of the *Resolution*, and the greatest part of our sails, on shore, under the protection of only six marines: their loss would have been irreparable; and though the natives had not as yet shewn the smallest disposition to molest us, yet it was impossible to answer for the alteration, which the news of the transaction at Kowrowa might produce. I therefore thought it prudent to dissemble my belief of the death of Captain Cook, and to desire Kaireekkea to discourage the report; lest either the fear of our resentment, or the successful example of their countrymen, might lead them to seize the favourable opportunity, which at this time offered itself, of giving us a second blow. At the same time, I advised him to bring old Kaoo, and the rest of the ~~prisoners, into a large house~~ that was close to the *Morai*; partly out of regard to their safety, in case it should have been necessary to proceed to extremities; and partly to have him near us, in order to make use of his authority with the people, if it could be instrumental in preserving peace.

Having placed the marines on the top of the *Morai*, which formed a strong and advantageous post, and left the command with Mr. Bligh, giving him the most positive directions to act entirely on the defensive, I went on board the *Discovery*, in order to represent to Captain Clerke the dangerous situation of our affairs. As soon as I quitted the spot, the natives began to annoy our people with stones; and I had scarcely reached the ship, before I heard the firing of the marines. I there-

fore returned instantly on shore, where I found things growing every moment more alarming. The natives were arming, and putting on their mats; and their numbers increased very fast. I could also perceive several large bodies marching towards us, along the cliffs which separates the village of Kalkooa from the north side of the bay, where the village of Kowrowa is situated.

They began, at first, to attack us with stones, from behind the walls of their inclosures, and finding no resistance on our part, they soon grew more daring. A few resolute fellows having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, suddenly made their appearance at the foot of the *Morai*, with a design, as it seemed, of storming it on the side near the sea, which was its only accessible part; and were not dislodged, till after they had stood a considerable number of shot, and seen one of their party fall.

The bravery of one of these assailants well deserves to be particularly mentioned. For having ~~been~~ ~~carried~~ ~~off~~ ~~by~~ ~~his~~ ~~companions~~, amidst the fire of our whole party, a wound, which he received, made him quit the body and retire; but, in a few minutes, he again appeared, and being again wounded, he was obliged a second time to retreat. ~~At this moment I arrived at the~~ ~~Morai~~, and saw him return the third time, bleeding and faint; and being informed of what had happened, I forbade the soldiers to fire, and he was suffered to carry off his friend; which he was just able to perform, and then fell down himself, and expired.

About this time, a strong reinforcement from both ships having landed, the natives retreated behind their walls; which giving me access to our friendly priests, I sent one of them to endeavour to bring their countrymen to some terms, and to propose to them, that if they would desist from throwing stones, I would

I would
was ag
the ma
cal ap
quitted
some o
us any

It v
got on
five pl
ings.
very o
which
it was
be tak
media
delibe
points

Du
certin
gious
the sh
and h
of the
conte
we co
arms
nad
retur

In
that
boats
a vic
possib
Chie

If
dead
to th

I would not permit our men to fire. This truce was agreed to; and we were suffered to launch the mast, and carry of the sails and our astronomical apparatus, unmolested. As soon as we had quitted the *Maiai*, they took possession of it, and some of them threw a few stones, but without doing us any mischief.

It was half an hour past eleven o'clock when I got on board the *Discovery*, where I found no decisive plan had been adopted for our future proceedings. The restitution of the boat, and the recovery of the body of Captain Cook were the objects, which, on all hands, we agreed to insist on; and it was my opinion, that some vigorous steps should be taken in case the demand of them was not immediately complied with. However, after mature deliberation, it was determined to accomplish these points by conciliatory measures, if possible.

During the time we were thus engaged in concerting some plan for our future conduct, a prodigious concourse of natives still kept possession of the shore; and some of them came off in canoes, and had the boldness to approach within pistol-shot of the ships, and to insult us by various marks of contempt and defiance. It was with great difficulty we could restrain the sailors from the use of their arms on these occasions; but as pacific measures had been resolved on, the canoes were suffered to return unmolested.

In pursuance of this plan, it was determined, that I should proceed toward the shore, with the boats of both ships well manned and armed, with a view to bring the natives to a parley, and, if possible, to obtain a conference with some of the Chiefs.

If this attempt succeeded, I was to demand the dead bodies, and particularly that of Captain Cook; to threaten them with our vengeance in case of a refusal.

fusal; but by no means to fire unless attacked, and not to land on any account whatever. These orders were delivered to me before the whole party, and in the most positive manner.

I left the ships about four o'clock in the afternoon, and as we approached the shore, I perceived every indication of a hostile reception. The whole crowd of natives was in motion; the women and children retiring; the men putting on their war mats, and arming themselves with long spears and daggers. We also observed, that, since the morning, they had thrown up stone breast-works along the beach where Captain Cook had landed, probably in expectation of an attack at that place; and as soon as we were within reach, they began to throw stones at us with slings, but without doing any mischief. Concluding, therefore, that all attempts to bring them to a parley would be in vain, unless I first gave them some ground for mutual confidence, I ordered the armed boats to stop, and went on in the small boat alone, with a white flag in my hand, which, by a general cry of joy from the natives, I had the satisfaction to find was instantly understood. The women immediately returned from the side of the hill, whither they had retired; the men threw off their mats; and all sat down together by the water side, extending their arms, and inviting me to come on shore.

Though this behavior was very expressive of a friendly disposition, yet I could not help entertaining some suspicions of its sincerity. But when I saw Koah, with a boldness and assurance altogether unaccountable, swimming off toward the boat, with a white flag in his hand, I thought it necessary to return this mark of confidence, and therefore received him into the boat, though armed; a circumstance which did not tend to lessen my suspicions. I must confess, I had long harboured an unfavourable

vourable

vourable
told us
friend's
and tre
represent
transac
acting
horror
came u
I was
not he
which
I told
Capta
unless
shou
go hi
of me
nothin
the se
tryme
W
his re
had a
conve
distan
to un
and
stanc
ships
It
delay
ingly
wou
cert
coul
und
ease

vourable opinion of this man. The priests had always told us, that he was of a malicious disposition, and no friend of ours; and the repeated detections of his fraud and treachery, had convinced us of the truth of their representations. Add to all this, the shocking transaction of the morning, in which he was seen acting a principal part, made me feel the utmost horror at finding myself so near him; and as he came up to me with feigned tears and embraced me, I was so distrustful of his intentions, that I could not help taking hold of the point of the *pahooah*, which he held in his hand, and turning it from me. I told him, that I had come to demand the body of Captain Cook, and to declare war against them, unless it was instantly restored. He assured me this should be done as soon as possible, and that he would go himself for that purpose; and after begging of me a piece of iron, with as much assurance as if nothing extraordinary had happened, he leaped into the sea, and swam ashore, calling out to his countrymen that we were all friends again.

We waited near an hour with great anxiety for his return; during which time, the rest of the boats had approached so near the shore, as to enter into conversation with a party of the natives at some distance from us; by whom they were plainly given to understand, that the body had been cut to pieces, and carried up the country; but of this circumstance I was not informed till our return to the ships.

I began now to express some impatience at Koah's delay, upon which the Chiefs pressed me exceedingly to come on shore; assuring me, that if I would go myself to Terreeboo, the body would certainly be restored to me. When they found they could not prevail on me to land, they attempted, under a pretence of wishing to converse with more ease, to decoy our boat among some rocks, where they

they would have had it in their power to cut us off from the rest. It was no difficult matter to see through these artifices; and I was therefore strongly inclined to break off all further communication with them, when a Chief came to us, who was the particular friend of Captain Clerke, and of the officers of the Discovery. He told us, he came from Terreeoboo, to acquaint us, that the body was carried up the country, but that it should be brought to us the next morning. There appeared a great deal of sincerity in his manner; and being asked if he told a falsehood, he hooked his two fore-fingers together, which is understood amongst these islanders as the sign of truth; in the use of which they are very scrupulous.

As I was at a loss in what manner to proceed, I sent Mr. Vancouver to acquaint Captain Clerke with all that had passed; that my opinion was, they meant not to keep their word with us, and were so far from being sorry at what had happened, that, on the contrary, they were full of spirits and confidence on account of their late success, and sought only to gain time, till they could contrive some scheme for getting us into their power. Mr. Vancouver came back with orders for me to return on board, having first given the natives to understand, that if the body was not brought the next morning, the town should be destroyed.

When they saw that we were going off, they endeavoured to provoke us by the most insulting and contemptuous gestures. Some of our people said, they could distinguish several of the natives parading about in the clothes of our unfortunate comrades; and among them, a Chief brandishing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman holding the scabbard. Indeed there can be no doubt but that our behaviour had given them a mean opinion of our courage; for they could have but little notion of the motives of humanity that directed it.

In co
Clerke,
per and
tual me
they m
moored
posted
to row
from c
served
which
ing th
quence
to have
accour
selves
bodies
burnin

We
morni
a prof
leave t
I was
tain C
suffer
dered
came
and c
swers
ing
and
it be
frien
be tr
T
durin
prese

In consequence of the report I made to Captain Clerke, of what I conceived to be the present temper and disposition of these islanders, the most effectual measures were taken to guard against any attack they might make in the night. The boats were moored with top-chains; additional sentinels were posted on both ships; and guard boats were stationed to row round them, in order to prevent the natives from cutting the cables. During the night we observed a prodigious number of lights on the hills, which made some of us imagine they were removing their effects back into the country, in consequence of our threats. But I rather believe them to have been the sacrifices that were performing on account of the war, in which they imagined themselves about to be engaged; and most probably the bodies of our slain countrymen were at that time burning.

We passed the night quietly, and early the next morning, Koah came along-side the Resolution with a present of ~~stock and a small pig, which he desired~~ leave to present to me. I have mentioned before that I was supposed, by the natives, to be the son of Captain Cook; and as he in his life-time had always suffered them to believe it, I was probably considered as the Chief after his death. As soon as I came on deck, I questioned him about the body; and on his returning me nothing but evasive answers, I refused to accept his presents and was going to dismiss him with some expressions of anger and resentment, had not Captain Clerke, judging it best at all events to keep up the appearance of friendship, thought it more proper that he should be treated with the usual respect.

This treacherous fellow came frequently to us during the course of the forenoon with some trifling present or other, and as I always observed him eye-

ing

ing every part of the ship with great attention, I took care he should see we were well prepared for our defence.

He was extremely urgent both with Captain Cleike and myself to go on shore, laying all the blame of the detention of the body on the other Chiefs; and assuring us that every thing might be settled to our satisfaction by a personal interview with Terreoboo. However, his conduct was too suspicious to make it prudent to comply with his request; and indeed a fact came afterward to our knowledge, which proved the entire falsehood of his pretensions. For we were told, that, immediately after the action in which Captain Cook was killed, the old King had retired to a cave in the steep part of the mountain that hangs over the bay, which was accessible only by the help of ropes, and where he remained for many days, having his victuals let down to him by cords.

When Koah returned from the ships, we could perceive that his countrymen ~~who had been collected~~ by break of day in vast crowds on the shore, thronged about him with great eagerness; as if to learn the intelligence he had acquired, and what was to be done in consequence of it. It is very probable that they expected we should attempt to put our threats in execution, and they seemed fully resolved to stand their ground. During the whole morning, we heard conchs blowing in different parts of the coast; large parties were seen marching over the hills; and, in short, appearances were so alarming, that we carried out a stream anchor to enable us to haul the ship abreast of the town in case of an attack, and stationed boats off the north point of the bay to prevent a surprise from that quarter.

The breach of their engagement to restore the bodies of the slain, and the warlike posture in which they at this time appeared, occasioned fresh debates
amongst

among
sued.

should
mast,
that w
ations

The
getting
for the
the ne
officers
devolv
the Re
Captai
vey, a
Cook
tenanc
interru
was ag
station

Ab
was he
as it w
it. T
they in
the wa
said th
belong
on bo
appear
them v
pieces
was th
the na
tended
ceremo
a man
dered

amongst us concerning the measures next to be pursued. It was at last determined, that nothing should be suffered to interfere with the repair of the mast, and the preparations for our departure; but that we should, nevertheless, continue our negotiations for the recovery of the bodies.

The greatest part of the day was taken up in getting the fore-mast into a proper situation on deck for the carpenters to work upon it, and in making the necessary alterations in the commissions of the officers. The command of the expedition having devolved on Captain Clerke, he removed on board the Resolution, appointed Lieutenant Gore to be Captain of the Discovery, and promoted Mr. Harvey, a midshipman, who had been with Captain Cook in his two last voyages, to the vacant Lieutenancy. During the whole day we met with no interruption from the natives, and at night the launch was again moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats stationed round both ships as before.

About eight o'clock, it being very dark, a canoe was heard paddling toward the ship; and as soon as it was seen, both the sentinels on deck fired into it. There were two persons in the canoe, and they immediately roared out "*Ténnee,*" (which was the way in which they pronounced my name) and said they were friends, and had something for me belonging to Captain Cook. When they came on board, they threw themselves at our feet, and appeared exceedingly frightened. Luckily neither of them was hurt, notwithstanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe. One of them was the person whom I have before mentioned under the name of the *Taboo* man, who constantly attended Captain Cook with the circumstances of ceremony I have already described; and who, though a man of rank in the island, could scarcely be hindered from performing for him the lowest offices of
a menial

a menial servant. After lamenting, with abundance of tears, the loss of the *Orono*, he told us, that he had brought us a part of his body. He then presented to us a small bundle wrapped up in cloth, which he brought under his arm; and it is impossible to describe the horror which seized us on finding in it a piece of human flesh, about nine or ten pounds weight. This, he said, was all that remained of the body; that the rest was cut to pieces and burnt; but that the head and all the bones, except what belonged to the trunk, were in the possession of *Terreeoboo* and the other *Erees*; that what we saw had been allotted to *Kaoo*, the chief of the priests, to be made use of in some religious ceremony, and that he had sent it as a proof of his innocence and attachment to us.

This afforded an opportunity of informing ourselves whether they were cannibals, and we did not neglect it. We first tried by many indirect questions, put to each of them apart, to learn in what manner the rest of the bodies had been disposed of; and finding them very constant in one story, that, after the flesh had been cut off, it was all burnt, we at last put the direct question, Whether they had not eat some of it? They immediately shewed as much horror at the idea as any European would have done; and asked, very naturally, if that was the custom amongst us? They afterward asked us, with great earnestness and apparent apprehension, "When the *Orono* would come again, and what he would do to them on his return?" The same inquiry was frequently made afterwards by others; and this idea agrees with the general tenour of their conduct toward him, which shewed that they considered him as a being of a superior nature.

We pressed our two friendly visitors to remain on board till morning, but in vain. They told us, that if this transaction should come to the know-
ledge

ledge
with
ciety;
obliged
precau
They
ger to
particu
who, t
my, an
portuni
the cor
as a cha

We
country
rowa,
and his
unfortu
were ki
also of

About
took th
might a
lest the
alarm
to the
was con
find tha

Duri
same lo
mornin
must c
notwith
in his
friends
carry
be the
was be

ledge of the King or Chiefs, it might be attended with the most fatal consequences to their whole society; in order to prevent which, they had been obliged to come off to us in the dark, and the same precaution would be necessary in returning on shore. They informed us farther, that the Chiefs were eager to revenge the death of their countrymen; and particularly cautioned us against trusting Koah, who, they said, was our mortal and implacable enemy, and desired nothing more ardently than an opportunity of fighting us; to which the blowing of the conchs we had heard in the morning was meant as a challenge.

We learned from these men that seventeen of their countrymen were killed in the first action at Kowrowa, of whom five were Chiefs; and that Keneena and his brother, our very particular friends, were unfortunately of that number. Eight, they said, were killed at the observatory; three of whom were also of the first rank.

About eleven o'clock our two friends left us, and took the precaution to desire that our guard-boat might attend them till they had passed the Discovery, lest they should again be fired upon, which might alarm their countrymen on shore, and expose them to the danger of being discovered. This request was complied with; and we had the satisfaction to find that they got safe and undiscovered to land.

During the remainder of this night, we heard the same loud howling and lamentations. Early in the morning we received another visit from Koah. I must confess, I was a little piqued to find, that notwithstanding the most evident marks of treachery in his conduct, and the positive testimony of our friends the priests, he should still be permitted to carry on the same farce, and to make us appear to be the dupes of his hypocrisy. Indeed our situation was become extremely awkward and unpromising;

none of the purposes for which this pacific course of proceeding had been adopted, having hitherto been in the least forwarded by it. No satisfactory answer whatever had been given to our demands; we did not seem to be at all advanced toward a reconciliation with the islanders; they still kept in force on the shore, as if determined to resist any attempts we might make to land; and yet the attempt was become absolutely necessary, as the completing our supply of water could not admit of any longer delay.

However it must be observed, in justice to the conduct of Capt. Clerke, that it was very probable, from the great numbers of the natives, and from the resolution with which they seemed to expect us, an attack could not have been made without some danger; and that the loss of a very few men might have been severely felt by us, during the remaining course of our voyage. Whereas the laying the execution of our threats, though, on one hand, it lessened their opinion of our prowess, had the effect of causing them to disperse, on the other. For, this day, about noon, finding us persist in our inactivity, great bodies of them, after blowing their conchs, and using every mode of defiance, marched off, over the hills, and never appeared afterward. Those, however, who remained, were not the less daring and insolent. One man had the audacity to come within musquet-shot, ahead of the ship; and, after slinging several stones at us, he waved Captain Cook's hat over his head, whilst his countrymen on shore were exulting, and encouraging his boldness. Our people were all in a flame at this insult, and coming in a body on the quarter-deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with these repeated provocations; and requested me to obtain permission for them, from Captain Clerke, to avail themselves of the first

first fa
Comm
was pa
be fire
crew,
at the
then b

It is
bring
our in
and ha
were
randon
duced
For, t
with e
that so
rest. M
relatio

So
off fro
long t
proach
in a v
from t
pointi
killed,
disaste
twelve
time th
the D
making
them,
we we

* Th
islands,
told, th
a stone,

first fair occasion of revenging the death of their Commander. On my acquainting him with what was passing, he gave orders for some great guns to be fired at the natives on shore; and promised the crew, that if they should meet with any molestation at the watering-place, the next day, they should then be left at liberty to chastise them.

It is somewhat remarkable, that, before we could bring our guns to bear, the islanders had suspected our intentions, from the stir they saw in the ship, and had retired behind their houses and walls. We were therefore obliged to fire, in some measure, at random; notwithstanding which, our shot produced all the effects that could have been desired. For, soon after, we saw Koah paddling towards us, with extreme haste, and, on his arrival, we learned, that some people had been killed, and amongst the rest, Maiha-maiha, a principal Chief, and a near relation to the King. *

Soon after the arrival of Koah, two boys swam off from the *Morai* toward the ships, having each a long spear in his hand; and after they had approached pretty near, they began to chant a song in a very solemn manner; the subject of which, from their often mentioning the word *Orono*, and pointing to the village where Captain Cook was killed, we concluded to be the late calamitous disaster. Having sung in a plaintive strain for about twelve or fifteen minutes, during the whole of which time they remained in the water, they went on board the *Discovery*, and delivered their spears; and, after making a short stay, returned on shore. Who sent them, or what was the object of this ceremony, we were never able to learn.

Y 2

At

* The word *matte*, is commonly used, in the language of these islands, to express either killing or wounding; and we were afterward told, that the Chief had only received a slight blow on the face from a stone, which had been struck by one of the balls.

At night, the usual precautions were taken for the security of the ships; and as soon as it was dark, our two friends, who had visited us the night before, came off again. They assured us, that though the effect of our great guns, this afternoon, had terrified the Chiefs exceedingly, they had by no means laid aside their hostile intentions, and advised us to be on our guard.

The next morning, the boats of both ships were sent ashore for water; and the Discovery was warped close to the beach, in order to cover that service. We soon found, that the intelligence which the priests had sent us, was not without foundation; and that the natives were resolved to take every opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much risk.

Throughout all this group of islands, the villages, for the most part, are situated near the sea; and the adjacent ground is inclosed with stone walls, about three feet high. These, we at first imagined, were intended for the division of property; but we now discovered, that they served, and probably were principally designed, for a defence against invasion. They consist of loose stones, and the inhabitants are very dexterous in shifting them, with great quickness, to such situations, as the direction of the attack may require. In the sides of the mountain, which hangs over the bay, they have also little holes, or caves, of considerable depth, the entrance of which is secured by a fence of the same kind. From behind both these defences the natives kept perpetually harrassing our waterers with stones; nor could the small force we had on shore, with the advantage of musquets, compel them to retreat.

In this exposed situation, our people were so taken up in attending to their own safety, that they employed the whole forenoon in filling only one ton of water. As it was therefore impossible to perform this

this
greate
lodge
fested
out m
made
of att
sary t
wall,
ecutin
peopl
ty and
be all
and o
to the
Com
duct
preca
a mo
hands
cafion
Th
huts,
were
villag
stop
shore
the p
lame
day.
tectio
on d
were
of th
prob
socie
S
esca

this service, till their assailants were driven to a greater distance, the Discovery was ordered to dislodge them, with her great guns; which being effected by a few discharges, the men landed without molestation. However, the natives soon after made their appearance again, in their usual mode of attack; and it was now found absolutely necessary to burn down some straggling houses near the wall, behind which they had taken shelter. In executing these orders, I am sorry to add, that our people were hurried into acts of unnecessary cruelty and devastation. Something ought certainly to be allowed to their resentment of the repeated insults, and contemptuous behavior, of the islanders, and to the natural desire of revenging the loss of their Commander. But, at the same time, their conduct served strongly to convince me, that the utmost precaution is necessary in trusting, though but for a moment, the discretionary use of arms, in the hands of private seamen, or soldiers, on such occasions.

Their orders were only to burn a few straggling huts, which afforded shelter to the natives. We were therefore a good deal surprised to see the whole village on fire; and before a boat, that was sent to stop the progress of the mischief, could reach the shore, the houses of our old and constant friends, the priests, were all in flames. I cannot enough lament the illness, that confined me on board this day. The priests had always been under my protection; and, unluckily, the officers who were then on duty, having been seldom on shore at the *Morai*, were not much acquainted with the circumstances of the place. Had I been present myself, I might probably have been the means of saving their little society from destruction.

Several of the natives were shot, in making their escape from the flames; and our people cut off the

heads of two of them, and brought them on board. The fate of one poor islander was much lamented by us all. As he was coming to the well for water, he was shot at by one of the marines. The ball struck his calibash, which he immediately threw from him and fled. He was pursued into one of the caves I have before described, and no lion could have defended his den with greater courage and fierceness; till at last, after having kept two of our people at bay for a considerable time, he expired, covered with wounds. It was this accident, that first brought us acquainted with the use of these caverns.

At this time, an elderly man was taken prisoner, bound, and sent on board in the same boat with the heads of his two countrymen. I never saw horror so strongly pictured, as in the face of this man, nor so violent a transition to extravagant joy, as when he was untied, and told he might go away in safety. He shewed us he did not want gratitude, as he frequently afterward returned with presents of provisions; and also did us other services.

Soon after the village was destroyed, we saw coming down the hill, a man, attended by fifteen or twenty boys, holding pieces of white cloth, green boughs, plantains, &c. in their hands. I knew not how it happened, that this peaceful embassy, as soon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of our men. This, however, did not stop them. They continued their procession, and the officer on duty came up, in time, to prevent a second discharge. As they approached nearer, it was found to be our much-esteemed friend Kaireekes, who had fled on our first setting fire to the village, and had now returned, and desired to be sent on board the Resolution.

When he arrived, we found him exceedingly grave and thoughtful. We endeavoured to make him

him u
fire t
of h
He c
friend
it wa
of th
relyin
the a
men,
Cool
the c
had
as w
a ho
mort
O
his c
was
earn
This
comp
In
board
We
tatio
ful t
that
petic
It
distu
on b
the f
their
they
whe
the f
or v

him understand the necessity we were under of setting fire to the village, by which his house, and those of his brethren, were unintentionally consumed. He expostulated a little with us on our want of friendship, and on our ingratitude. And, indeed, it was not till now, that we learnt the whole extent of the injury we had done him. He told us, that, relying on the promises I had made them, and on the assurances they had afterwards received from the men, who had brought us the remains of Captain Cook, they had not removed their effects back into the country, with the rest of the inhabitants, but had put every thing that was valuable of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a house close to the *Morai*, where they had the mortification to see it all set on fire by ourselves.

On coming on board, he had seen the heads of his countrymen, lying on the deck, at which he was exceedingly shocked, and desired, with great earnestness, that they might be thrown over-board. This request Captain Clerke instantly ordered to be complied with.

In the evening, the watering party returned on board, having met with no farther interruption. We passed a gloomy night; the cries and lamentations we heard on shore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only consolation was, the hope that we should have no occasion, in future, for a repetition of such severities.

It is very extraordinary, that, amidst all these disturbances, the women of the island, who were on board, never offered to leave us, nor discovered the smallest apprehensions either for themselves or their friends ashore. So entirely unconcerned did they appear, that some of them, who were on deck when the town was in flames, seemed to admire the sight, and frequently cried out, that it was *maitai*, or very fine.

The next morning, Koah came off as usual to the ships. As there existed no longer any necessity for keeping terms with him, I was allowed to have my own way. When he approached toward the side of the ship, singing his song, and offering me a hog, and some plaintains, I ordered him to keep off, cautioning him never to appear again without Captain Cook's bones, lest his life should pay the forfeit of his frequent breach of promise. He did not appear much mortified with this reception, but went immediately on shore, and joined a party of his countrymen, who were pelting the waterers with stones. The body of the young man, who had been killed the day before, was found this morning, lying at the entrance of the cave; and some of our people went, and threw a mat over it. Soon after which they saw some men carrying him off on their shoulders, and could hear them singing, as they marched, a mournful song.

The natives being at last convinced that it was not the want of ability to punish them, which had hitherto made us tolerate their provocations, desisted from giving us any farther molestation; and, in the evening, a Chief called Eappo, who had seldom visited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the very first consequence, came with presents from Terreoboo to sue for peace. These presents were received, and he was dismissed with the same answer which had before been given, that, until the remains of Captain Cook should be restored, no peace would be granted. We learned from this person, that the flesh of all the bodies of our people, together with the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb bones of the marines had been divided amongst the inferior Chiefs; and that those of Captain Cook had been disposed of in the following manner: the head, to a great Chief, called Kahoo-opeon, the hair to Maia-maia; and the legs, thighs,

thigh
dark
and
larg

T

rece

tain

pres

shor

as a

it w

left

At t

oppo

our

with

preh

E

tisfa

an o

dang

the p

B

num

the b

ryin

brea

were

cam

and

follo

ing

tired

in f

thin

ing

boa

thighs, and arms, to Terreeoboo. After it was dark, many of the inhabitants came off with roots and other vegetables; and we also received two large presents of the same articles from Kaireekeea.

The 19th was chiefly taken up in sending and receiving the messages which passed between Captain Clerke and Terreeoboo. Eappo was very pressing, that one of our officers should go on shore; and, in the mean time, offered to remain as an hostage on board. This request, however, it was not thought proper to comply with; and he left us with a promise of bringing the bones next day. At the beach the waterers did not meet with the least opposition from the natives; who, notwithstanding our cautious behaviour, came amongst us again, without the smallest appearance of diffidence or apprehension.

Early in the morning of the 20th, we had the satisfaction of getting the fore-mast stepped. It was an operation attended with great difficulty, and some danger; our ropes being so extremely rotten, that the purchase gave way several times.

Between ten and eleven o'clock, we saw a great number of people descending the hill, which is over the beach, in a kind of procession, each man carrying a sugar-cane or two on his shoulders, and bread-fruit, *taro*, and plantains in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers; who, when they came to the water-side, sat down by a white flag, and began to beat their drums, while those who had followed them, advanced, one by one; and, having deposited the presents they had brought, retired in the same order. Soon after, Eappo came in sight, in his long feathered cloak, bearing something with great solemnity in his hands; and having placed himself on a rock, he made signs for a boat to be sent him.

Captain

Captain Clerke, conjecturing that he had brought the bones of Captain Cook, which proved to be the fact, went himself in the pinnace to receive them; and ordered me to attend him in the cutter. When we arrived at the beach, Eappo came into the pinnace, and delivered to the Captain the bones wrapped up in a large quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a spotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterwards attended us to the Resolution, but could not be prevailed upon to go on board; probably not choosing, from a sense of decency, to be present at the opening of the bundle. We found in it both the hands of Captain Cook entire, which were well known from a remarkable scar on one of them, that divided the thumb from the fore-finger, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the skull, but with the scalp separated from it, and the bones that form the face wanting; the scalp with the hair upon it cut short, and ears adhering to it; the bones of both arms, with the skin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the thigh and leg-bones joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints were entire; and the whole bore evident marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the flesh left upon them, and were cut in several places, and crammed with salt, apparently with an intention of preserving them. The scalp had a cut in the back part of it, but the skull was free from any fracture. The lower jaw and feet, which were wanting, Eappo told us, had been seized by different Chiefs, and that Terreeoboo was using every means to recover them.

The next morning, Eappo, and the King's son, came on board, and brought with them the remaining bones of Captain Cook, the barrels of his gun, his shoes, and some other trifles that belonged to him. Eappo took great pains to convince us, that

that T
most h
us the
and th
sooner,
still ou
sorrow
of who
The cr
people
had bee
the nex
had als
ried off
verable
preserve

Not
offices
Eappo
and, ir
if a
were c
honour
I leave
sent kn

Dur
was see
Eappo
not bei
to us.
fatisfied
remem
him.

taboo,
bring t
surrou
came o
happen

that Terreeboo, Maiha-maiha, and himself, were most heartily desirous of peace; that they had given us the most convincing proofs of it in their power; and that they had been prevented from giving it sooner, by the other Chiefs, many of whom were still our enemies. He lamented, with the greatest sorrow, the death of six Chiefs we had killed, some of whom, he said, were amongst our best friends. The cutter, he told us, was taken away by Pareea's people; very probably in revenge for the blow that had been given him; and that it had been broken up the next day. The arms of the marines, which we had also demanded, he assured us, had been carried off by the common people, and were irrecoverable; the bones of the Chief alone having been preserved, as belonging to Terreeboo and the *Erees*.

Nothing now remained, but to perform the last offices to our great and unfortunate Commander. Eappo was dismissed with orders to *taboo* all the bay; and, in the afternoon, the bones having been put in a coffin, and the service read over them, they were committed to the deep with the usual military honours. What our feelings were on this occasion, I leave the world to conceive; those who were present know, that it is not in my power to express them.

During the afternoon of the 22d, not a canoe was seen paddling in the bay; the *taboo*, which Eappo had laid on it the day before, at our request, not being yet taken off. At length Eappo came off to us. We assured him, that we were now entirely satisfied; and that, as the *Orono* was buried, all remembrance of what had passed was buried with him. We afterwards desired him to take off the *taboo*, and to make it known, that the people might bring their provisions as usual. The ships were soon surrounded with canoes, and many of the Chiefs came on board, expressing great sorrow at what had happened, and their satisfaction at our reconciliation.

Several

Several of our friends, who did not visit us, sent presents of large hogs, and other provisions. Amongst the rest, came the old treacherous Koah, but was refused admittance.

As we had now every thing ready for sea, about eight o'clock this evening we dismissed all the natives; Eappo, and the friendly Kaireekkea, took an affectionate leave of us. We immediately weighed, and stood out of the bay. The natives were collected on the shore in great numbers; and, as we passed along, received our last farewells with every mark of affection and good-will."

They got clear off the land about ten on the 22d; and, hoisting in the boats, stood to the Northward.

In the afternoon of the 24th, the weather being calm, with light airs from the West, they stood on to the North North West; but at sun-set, observing a shoal, stretching from the West point of Mowee, toward the middle of the passage, they tacked, and stood toward the South.

The South West side of this island, which they now had passed without being able to get near the shore, forms the same distant view with the North East, as seen on their return from the North, in November 1778.

Captain Clerke determined, without farther loss of time, to proceed to Atooi. On the 28th, they bore away for that island, which they were in sight of by noon; and about sun-set, were off its Eastern extremity.

They passed the night in plying on and off, and at nine the next morning, came to an anchor in twenty-five fathoms water.

They had no sooner anchored in their old station, than several canoes came along-side of them; but they could observe, that they did not welcome them with the same cordiality in their manner, and satisfaction in their countenances, as when they were here before.

before
men b
among
both f

The
with
sent on
the R
sions;
found
the be
ness;
began
great
cordin
the tra
they fa
the fol
force,
to the
return
a dagg
ado to
soldier
ing gi
order

The
great
orders
recour
tive co
given,
water
incline
people
this no
the fail
Cap
of the
lence,
as a fri

before. As soon as they got on board, one of the men began to complain that they had left a disorder amongst their women, of which several persons of both sexes had died.

Their principal object here was to water the ships with the utmost expedition; and Captain King was sent on shore early in the afternoon. The gunner of the Resolution accompanied him to trade for provisions; and they had a guard of five marines. They found a considerable number of people collected upon the beach, who received them at first with great kindness; but as soon as they had got the casks on shore, began to be exceedingly troublesome. It was with great difficulty they were able to form a circle, according to the usual practice, for the convenience of the trading party; and had no sooner done it, than they saw a man laying hold of the bayonet of one of the soldiers musquets, and endeavouring with all his force, to wrench it out of his hand. On coming up to them, the native let go his hold and retired; but returned in a moment, with a spear in one hand, and a dagger in the other; and his countrymen had much ado to restrain him from trying his prowess with the soldier. This fray was occasioned by the latter's having given the man a slight prick with his bayonet, in order to make him keep without the line.

They now perceived, that their situation required great circumspection and management; the strictest orders were given, that no one should fire, nor have recourse to any other act of violence, without positive commands. As soon as these directions were given, Captain King was called to the assistance of the watering party, where he found the natives equally inclined to mischief. They had demanded from the people a large hatchet for every cask of water; and this not being complied with, they would not suffer the sailors to roll them down to the boats.

Captain King had no sooner joined them, than one of the natives advanced up to him with great insolence, and made the same claim. He told him, that as a friend, he was very willing to present him with a

hatchet, but that he should certainly carry off the water, without paying any thing for it; and immediately ordered the pinnace men to proceed in their business, and called three marines from the traders to protect them.

This shew of spirit succeeded so far as to make the natives desist from any open attempt to interrupt them, yet they still continued to behave in the most teasing and provoking manner. Some of them, under pretence of assisting the men in rolling down the casks, turned them out of their course, and gave them a wrong direction; others were stealing the hats from off the sailors heads, pulling them backward by their clothes, or tripping up their heels; the whole crowd, all this time, shouting and laughing, with a strange mixture of childishness and malice. Though they continued, for the most part, to pay great deference and respect to Captain King, yet they did not suffer him to escape without contributing his share to their stock of plunder. One of them came up to him with a familiar air, and with great management diverted his attention, whilst another, wrenching the hanger, which he held carelessly in his hand, from him, ran off with it like lightning; he was afterwards much alarmed by a serjeant of marines, who informed him, that on turning quickly round, he saw a man behind him holding a dagger in the attitude of striking.

It was in vain to think of repelling this insolence by force; guarding therefore against its effects, in the best manner they were able, they had nothing to do but to submit patiently to it.

While they were getting the casks into the launch, the natives, perceiving the opportunity of plundering would soon be over, became every moment more daring and insolent. On this occasion, the same serjeant suggested, the advantage that would arise from sending off his party first into the boats; by which means, the musquets of the soldiers, which, as has been already mentioned, were the objects the islanders had principally in view, would be removed out of their reach; and in case of an attack, the marines

themselves

them
if th
T
only
Capt
lay b
swim
way
W
refuse
amon
seems
befor
on hi
him;
starte
in it.
maine
settled
by the
as the
clubs
the pi
distan
he cal
the hu
when
away,
left be
tempt
much
The r
wound
with a
the pe
person
drivin
Dur
under
appreh
having
he had

themselves might be employed more effectually than if they were on shore.

They had now got every thing into the boats, and only the gunner, a seaman of the boat's crew, and Captain King remained on shore. As the pinnace lay beyond the surf through which we were obliged to swim, the Captain told them to make the best of their way to it, and that he should follow them.

With this order he was surpris'd to find them both refuse to comply, and the consequence was a contest amongst them who should be the last on shore. It seems, that some hasty words the Captain had just before used to the sailor, which he thought reflected on his courage, was the cause of this odd fancy in him; and the old gunner, finding a point of honour started, thought he could not well avoid taking a part in it. In this ridiculous situation they might have remained some time, had not the dispute been soon settled by the stones that began to fly about them, and by the cries of the people from the boats to make haste, as the natives were following them into the water with clubs and spears. Captain King reached the side of the pinnace first, and finding the gunner was at some distance behind, and not yet entirely out of danger, he called out to the marines to fire one musquet. In the hurry of executing his orders they fired two; and when he got into the boat, he saw the natives running away, and one man, with a woman sitting by him, left behind on the beach. The man made several attempts to rise, without being able; and it was with much regret, he found he was wounded in the groin. The natives soon after returned and surrounded the wounded man, brandishing their spears and daggers with an air of threatening and defiance; but before the people had all reached the ships they saw some persons whom they supposed to be Chiefs now arrived, driving them away from the shore.

During their absence, Captain Clerke had been under the greatest anxiety for their safety. And these apprehensions were considerably increased, from his having entirely mistaken the drift of the conversation he had held with some natives who had been on board.

The frequent mention of the name of Captain Cook, with other strong and circumstantial descriptions of death and destruction, made him conclude, that the knowledge of the unfortunate events at Owhyhee had reached them, and that these were what they alluded to; whereas all they had in view was to make known to him the wars that had arisen, in consequence of the goats that Captain Cook had left at Ooneheow, and the slaughter of the poor goats themselves, during the struggle for the property of them. Captain Clerke, applying this earnestness of conversation, and these terrible representations, to our calamitous transactions at Owhyhee, and to an indication of revenge, kept his telescope fixed upon us, and the moment he saw the smoke of the musquets, ordered the boats to be armed and put off to our assistance.

The next morning, March 2, they went again on shore with the watering party. The risk they had run the preceding day, determined Captain Clerke to send a considerable force from both ships for their guard, amounting in all to forty men under arms. This precaution however, was now unnecessary; for they found the beach left entirely to themselves, and the ground between the landing place and the lake *tabooed* with small white flags. They concluded from this appearance, that some of the Chiefs had certainly visited this quarter; and that, not being able to stay, they had kindly and considerately taken this step for their greater security and convenience. They saw several men armed with long spears and daggers on the other side of the river on the right, but they did not offer to give them the least molestation. Their women came over and sat down on the banks close by them, and at noon they prevailed on some of the men to bring hogs and roots and to dress them. As soon as they had left the beach they came down to the sea side, and one of them threw a stone; but his conduct seeming to be highly disapproved of by all the rest, therefore they did not think it proper to shew any resentment.

The next day they completed their watering without meeting with any material difficulty. Some

Chiefs

Chief
havior
condu
cipal
before

The
on sho
the c
ships,
cruise.

On
and fa
of the
ticular

The
of Lon
the lib
ertions

Owl
est of
nearly
its br
geogra

The
Easter
declivi
the wh
fruit t
they f
suppos
ceeds

Tener

The
horrid
to hav
some d
covere
with b

The
most e
provis

Chiefs had been on board to make excuses for the behaviour of the inhabitants, attributing their riotous conduct, to quarrels then subsisting between the principal people, on account of the goats, as mentioned before.

This, and the two following days, were employed on shore in completing the Discovery's water; and the carpenters were busy on board in caulking the ships, and in making other preparations for our next cruise.

On the 8th, at nine in the morning, they weighed, and sailed towards Oneeheow. Here they took leave of the Sandwich Isles; some account of them (particularly Owhyhee) cannot be unacceptable.

They were called so by Captain Cook, in honour of Lord Sandwich, as a tribute justly due to him for the liberal support these Voyages derived from his exertions.

Owhyhee, the Easternmost, and by much the largest of these islands, is of a triangular shape, and nearly equilateral. Its greatest length is $28\frac{1}{2}$ leagues; its breadth is 24 leagues; and it is about 255 geographical, or 293 English miles in circumference.

The coast to the North East, which forms the Eastern extremity of the island, is low and flat; the declivity of the inland parts is very gradual, and the whole country covered with cocoa-nut and bread-fruit trees. On doubling the East point of this island, they saw a mountain, called Mouno Roa, which is supposed to be at least 16,020 feet high, which exceeds the height of the Pico de Teyde, or Peak of Teneriffe, by 724 feet.

The coast of Kaoo presents a prospect of the most horrid and dreary kind: the whole country appearing to have undergone a total change from the effects of some dreadful convulsion. The ground is every where covered with cinders, and intersected in many places with black streaks.

The neighbouring sea abounds with a variety of most excellent fish, with which, as well as with other provisions, the ships were always plentifully supplied.

Off this part of the coast they could find no ground, at less than a cable's length from the shore, with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line, excepting in a small bight to the Eastward of the South point.

The number of dogs in these islands did not appear to be nearly equal, in proportion, to those in Otaheite. But on the other hand, they abound much more in hogs; and the breed is of a larger and weightier kind. The supply of provisions of this kind, which was got from them, was really astonishing. The ships were almost four months either cruising off the coast, or in harbour at Owhyhee. During all this time, a large allowance of fresh pork was constantly served to both crews; so that their consumption was computed at about sixty puncheons of five hundred weight each. Besides this, and the incredible waste which, in the midst of such plenty, was not to be guarded against, sixty puncheons more were salted for sea store. The greatest part of this supply was drawn from the island of Owhyhee alone, and yet we could not perceive that it was at all drained, or even that the abundance had any way decreased.

The birds of this island are both numerous and beautiful; there are four particularly so, which seem to belong to the *trochili*, or honey-suckers of Linnæus, one of which is something larger than a bullfinch; its colour is a fine glossy black, the rump-vent and thighs a deep yellow. It is called by the natives *hooboo*. Another is of an exceeding bright scarlet colour; the wings black, and edged with white; and the tail black; its native name is *eeewee*. A third, which seems to be either a young bird, or a variety of the foregoing, is variegated with red, brown, and yellow. The fourth is entirely green, with a tinge of yellow, and is called *akaicarooa*. There is a species of thrush, with a grey breast; and a small bird of the flycatcher kind; a rail, with very short wings and no tail, which on that account, we named *rallus ecaudatus*. Ravens are found here, but they are very scarce.

The

T
doub
land
and
inter
tude
long
extra
prov
custo
is es
iden

T
well
and
upon
point
ers,
of
than
geth
both
men
sweet
then
black
Ind
the
the
the
Kir
one
the
flat
the
ma
wh
tog

for
illa

The inhabitants of the Sandwich islands are undoubtedly of the same race with those of New Zealand, the Society and Friendly Islands, Easter Island, and the Marquesas; a race that possesses, without any intermixture, all the known lands between the latitudes of 47° South, and 20° North, and between the longitudes of 184° and 260° East. This fact, which, extraordinary as it is, might be thought sufficiently proved by the striking similarity of their manners and customs, and the general resemblance of their persons, is established, beyond all controversy, by the absolute identity of their language.

They are, in general, above the middle size, and well made; they walk very gracefully, run nimbly, and are capable of bearing great fatigue; though, upon the whole, the men are somewhat inferior, in point of strength and activity, to the Friendly Islanders, and the women less delicately limbed than those of Otaheite. Their complexion is rather darker than that of the Otaheiteans, and they are not altogether so handsome a people. However, many of both sexes had fine open countenances; and the women, in particular, had good eyes and teeth, and a sweetness and sensibility of look, which rendered them very engaging. Their hair is of a brownish black, and neither uniformly straight, like that of the Indians of America, nor uniformly curling, as amongst the African negroes, but varying, in this respect, like the hair of Europeans. One striking peculiarity, in the features of every part of this great nation, Captain King does not remember to have seen any where mentioned; which is, that, even in the handsomest faces, there is always a fullness of the nostril, without any flatness or spreading of the nose, that distinguishes them from Europeans. It is not improbable that this may be the effect of their usual mode of salutation, which is performed by pressing the ends of their noses together.

The same superiority that is observable in the persons of the *Erees* or Chiefs through all the other islands, is found also here. Those whom they saw, were,

were, without exception, perfectly well formed; whereas the lower sort, besides their general inferiority, are subject to all the variety of make and figure, that is seen in the populace of other countries. Many of the Chiefs suffered dreadfully from the immoderate use of *kava*; those who were the most affected by it, had their bodies covered with a white scurf, their eyes red and inflamed, their limbs emaciated, the whole frame trembling and paralytic, accompanied with a disability to raise the head. It is fortunate, that the use of it is made one of the peculiar privileges of the Chiefs. The young son of Terreeboe, who was about twelve years old, used to boast of his being admitted to drink *kava*, and shewed, with great triumph, a small spot in his side that was growing scaly.

There is something very singular in the history of this pernicious drug. When Captain Cook first visited the Society Islands, it was very little known among them. On his second voyage, he found the use of it very prevalent at Ulietea; but it had still gained very little ground at Otaheite. When he was last there, the dreadful havock it had made was beyond belief, insomuch that the Captain scarce knew many of his old acquaintances. At the Friendly Islands, it is also constantly drank by the Chiefs, but so much diluted with water, that it does not appear to produce any bad effects.

Notwithstanding the irreparable loss they suffered from the sudden resentment and violence of these people, yet, in justice to their general conduct, it must be acknowledged, that they are of the most mild and affectionate disposition; equally remote from the extreme levity and fickleness of the Otaheiteans, and the distant gravity and reserve of the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands. They appear to live in the utmost harmony and friendship with one another. The women, who had children, were remarkable for their tender and constant attention to them; and the men would often lend their assistance in those do-

mestic

mestic
their f

It m
short o
tion,
not on
men,
them.
ral kin
and it
for ha
terdis

In j
ladies
proba

Th
the ge
fity w
the r
the f
had p
best a
docil

Th
in th
other
parti
opini
obtai
recei

T
of t
fally
few,
off e
uppe

B
vari
hand
broa
whic

messic offices, with a willingness that does credit to their feelings.

It must, however, be observed, that they fall very short of the other islanders, in that best test of civilization, the respect paid to the women. Here they are not only deprived of the privilege of eating with the men, but the best sorts of food are *taboed*, or forbidden them. They are not allowed to eat pork, turtle, several kinds of fish, and some species of the plantains; and it was said that a poor girl got a terrible beating, for having eaten, on board our ship, one of these interdicted articles.

In justice to the sex, it must be observed, that those ladies who admitted familiarities with our Men were probably all of the lower class of the people.

Their natural capacity seems in no respect below the common standard of mankind. The eager curiosity with which they attended the armourer's forge, and the many expedients they had invented, even before the ships left the islands, for working the iron they had procured from the crews, into such forms as were best adapted to their purposes, were strong proofs of docility and ingenuity.

They met with two instances of persons disordered in their minds; the one, a man at Owhyhee, the other, a woman of Oneeheow. It appeared, from the particular attention and respect paid to them, that the opinion of their being inspired by the divinity, which obtains among most of the nations of the East, is also received here.

The inhabitants of these islands differ from those of the Friendly Isles, in suffering, almost universally, their beards to grow. There were indeed a few, amongst whom was the old King, that cut it off entirely, and others that wore it only upon the upper lip.

Both sexes wear necklaces made of strings of small variegated shells; and an ornament, in the form of the handle of a cup, about two inches long, and half an inch broad, made of wood, stone, or ivory, finely polished, which is hung about the neck by fine threads of twilled hair,

hair, double sometimes an hundred fold. Instead of this ornament, some of them wear on their breast a small human figure made of bone, suspended in the same manner.

The custom of *tattooing* the body, they have in common with the rest of the natives of the South Sea Islands; but it is only at New Zealand and the Sandwich Islands, that they *tattoo* the face. They have a singular custom amongst them, the meannig of which they could not discover, that of *tattooing* the tip of the tongues of the females.

The dress of the men generally consists only of a piece of thick cloth called the *maro*, about ten or twelve inches broad, which they pass between the legs, and tie round the waist. This is the common dress of all ranks of people. But they have another, appropriated to their Chiefs, and used on ceremonious occasions, consisting of a feathered cloak and helmet, which, in point of beauty and magnificence, is perhaps nearly equal to that of any nation in the world. These cloaks are made of different lengths, in proportion to the rank of the wearer, some of them reaching no lower than the middle, others trailing on the ground.

The common dress of the women bears a close resemblance to that of the men. They wrap round the waist a piece of cloth that reaches half way down the thighs, and sometimes, in the cool of the evening, they appeared with loose pieces of fine cloth thrown over their shoulders, like the women of Otaheite. The *pau* is another dress very frequently worn by the younger part of the sex. It is made of the thinnest and finest sort of cloth, wrapt several times round the waist, and descending to the leg, so as to have the appearance of a full short petticoat.

Their necklaces are made of shells, or of a hard, shining, red berry. Besides which, they wear wreaths of dried flowers of an Indian mallow; and another beautiful ornament, called *eraie*, which is generally put about the neck, but is sometimes tied like a garland round the hair, and sometimes worn in both

those

these w
finger,
feathers
face as
ground
circles

The
cipally
potatoe
fruit.

flesh of
at the
same d
plentif
they sa
first im
any ten
give to
Erees u
ner, at

The
their m
food,
to ours
a doze
usual r
and ar
mentio
kinds

The
simple
the su
retire
canoes
the w
the 7
tions a

Th
nor re
saw,
which

these ways at once. It is a ruff of the thickness of a finger, made in a curious manner of exceedingly small feathers, woven so close together, as to form a surface as smooth as that of the richest velvet. The ground was generally of a red colour, with alternate circles of green, yellow, and black.

The food of the lower class of people consists principally of fish and vegetables; such as yams, sweet-potatoes, tarrow, plantains, sugar-canes, and bread-fruit. To these, the people of a higher rank add the flesh of hogs and dogs, dressed in the same manner as at the Society Islands. They also eat fowls of the same domestic kind with ours; but they are neither plentiful, nor much esteemed by them. Their fish they salt, and preserve in gourd-shells; not, as we at first imagined, for the purpose of providing against any temporary scarcity, but from the preference they give to salted meats. For we also found that the *Erees* used to pickle pieces of pork in the same manner, and esteemed it a great delicacy.

They are exceedingly cleanly at their meals; and their mode of dressing both their animal and vegetable food, was universally allowed to be greatly superior to ours. The Chiefs constantly begin their meal with a doze of the extract of pepper-root, brewed after the usual manner. The women eat a part from the men, and are *tabooed*, or forbidden, as has been already mentioned, the use of pork, turtle, and particular kinds of plantains.

The way of spending their time appears to be very simple, and to admit of little variety. They rise with the sun; and after enjoying the cool of the evening, retire to rest a few hours after sun-set. The making of canoes and mats forms the occupations of the *Erees*; the women are employed in manufacturing cloth, and the *Towtows* are principally engaged in the plantations and fishing.

Their music is of a rude kind, having neither flutes nor reeds, nor instruments of any other sort, that we saw, except drums of various sizes. But their songs, which they sung in parts, and accompany with a gentle

the motion of the arms, in the same manner as the Friendly Islanders, had a very pleasing effect.

Swimming is not only a necessary art, in which both their men and women are more expert than any people we had hitherto seen, but a favourite diversion amongst them. One particular mode, in which they sometimes amused themselves with this exercise in Karakahooa Bay, appeared most perilous and extraordinary, and well deserving a distinct relation,

The surf, which breaks on the coast round the bay, extends to the distance of about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore, within which space, the surges of the sea, accumulating from the shallowness of the water, are dashed against the beach with prodigious violence. Whenever, from stormy weather, or any extraordinary swell at sea, the impetuosity of the surf is increased to its utmost height, they choose that time for this amusement, which is performed in the following manner: Twenty or thirty of the natives, taking each a narrow board rounded at the ends, set out together from the shore. The first wave they meet they plunge under, and suffering it to roll over them, rise again beyond it, and make the best of their way, by swimming out into the sea. The second wave is encountered in the same manner with the first; the great difficulty consisting in seizing the proper moment of diving under it, which, if missed, the person is caught by the surf, and driven back again with great violence; and all his dexterity is then required to prevent himself from being dashed against the rocks. As soon as they have gained, by these repeated efforts, the smooth water beyond the surf, they lay themselves at length on their board, and prepare for their return. The coast being guarded by a chain of rocks, with, here and there, a small opening between them, they are obliged to steer their board through one of these, or, in case of failure, to quit it before they reach the rocks, and plunging under the wave, make the best of their way back again. This is reckoned very disgraceful, and is also attended with the loss of the board, which has been often seen with great ter-

ror

rord
da
quitte
law th
nouve
to be

An
shews
to the
set its
which
an inf
seeme
swimm
tricks

Be
young
at, an
take
runni
about
made
with
and i
they
on ea
sidera
game
catch
that y
motio
peopl
Islan

Th
and,
a var
lours
with
straw
work
wavi

ror dashed to pieces, at the very moment the islander quitted it. The boldness and address with which we saw them perform these difficult and dangerous manœuvres, was altogether astonishing, and is scarcely to be credited.

An accident, of which they were a near spectator, shews at how early a period they are so far familiarized to the water, as both to lose all fears of it, and to set its dangers at defiance. A canoe being over-set, in which was a woman with her children, one of them an infant, who, was not more than four years old, seemed highly delighted with what had happened, swimming about at its ease, and playing a hundred tricks, till the canoe was put to rights again.

Besides the amusements already mentioned, the young children have one, which was much played at, and shewed no small degree of dexterity. They take a short stick, with a peg sharpened at both ends, running through one extremity of it, and extending about an inch on each side; and throwing up a ball made of green leaves moulded together, and secured with twine, they catch it on the point of the peg; and immediately throwing it up again from the peg, they turn the stick round, and thus keep catching it on each peg alternately, without missing it, for a considerable time. They are not less expert at another game of the same nature, tossing up in the air, and catching, in their turns, a number of these balls; so that we frequently saw little children thus keep in motion five at a time. With this latter play the young people likewise divert themselves at the Friendly Islands.

Their mats are made of the leaves of the *pandanus*; and, as well as their clothes, are beautifully worked in a variety of patterns, and stained of different colours. Some have a ground of pale green, spotted with squares, or romboids, of red; others are of a straw colour, spotted with green; and others are worked with beautiful stripes, either in straight or waving lines of red and brown,

A a

Their

Their fishing hooks are made of mother-of-pearl, bone, or wood, pointed and barbed with small bones, or tortoise-shell. They are of various sizes and forms; but the most common are about three inches long. Considering the materials of which these hooks are made, their strength and neatness are really astonishing; and, in fact, they are found, upon trial, much superior to those used in these parts of the Globe.

The line which they use for fishing, for making nets, and for other domestic purposes, is of different degrees of fineness, and is made of the bark of the *souta*, or cloth tree, neatly and evenly twisted.

The gourds which grow to so enormous a size, that some of them are capable of containing from ten to twelve gallons, are applied to all manner of domestic purposes; and in order to fit them the better to their respective uses, they have the ingenuity to give them different forms, by tying bandages round them during their growth. Thus, some of them are of a long, cylindrical form, others are of a dish form, and serve to hold their salt provisions, their puddings, vegetables, &c. which two sorts have neat close covers, made likewise of the gourd; others again are exactly the shape of a bottle with a long neck, and in these they keep their water.

The Chiefs exercise their power over one another in the most haughty and oppressive manner. Of this, the following is a striking instance: A Chief of the lower order had behaved with great civility to one of the officers; and, in return, he was carried on board and introduced to Captain Cook, who invited him to dine. While they were at table, Pareea, who was Chief of a superior order, entered, whose face but too plainly manifested his indignation, at seeing his inferior in so honourable a situation. He immediately seized him by the hair of the head, and was proceeding to drag him out of the cabin, when the Captain interfered; and after a deal of altercation, all the indulgence that could be obtained without coming to a quarrel with Pareea, was, that he should be suf-
fered

ferred
Pareea

In
Office
they
finger
the li
the w

Hu
to the
other
only l
and p
prises
for a
his ra
fined

To
that
tory f
chief

ferred to remain, being seated upon the floor, whilst Pareea filled his place at the table.

In a bay to the Southward of Karakakooa, a party of Officers were conducted to a large house, in which they found the black figure of a man, resting on his fingers and toes, with his head inclined backward; the limbs well formed and exactly proportioned, and the whole beautifully polished.

Human sacrifices are more frequent here, according to the account of the natives themselves, than in any other islands they visited. These horrid rites are not only had recourse to upon the commencement of war, and preceding great battles, and other signal enterprises; but the death of any considerable Chief calls for a sacrifice of one or more *Towtows*, according to his rank; and they were told, that ten men were destined to suffer on the death of Terreeoboo.

To this class of their customs may also be referred that of knocking out their fore-teeth, as a propitiatory sacrifice to the *Eatosa*, to avert any danger or mischief to which they might be exposed,

PART VI. and LAST.

Transactions during the Second Expedition to the North, by the Way of Kamtschatka; and on the Return home, by the Way of Canton, and the Cape of Good Hope, from March 1779, to August 1780.

ON the 15th of March, they weighed anchor, and stood on to the South West. On the 23d the wind, which had been moderate for some time, freshened and increased to a strong gale, which split some of their sails, and made the running rigging very frequently give way. This gale lasted twelve hours; it then became more moderate, and continued so till the 25th at noon, when they entirely lost it, and had only a very light air.

On the 30th, the winds and unsettled state of the weather induced Captain Clerke to alter his plan, and at six in the evening, they began to steer North West, which they continued till the 6th of April, when they lost the trade wind. The fine weather they met with between the tropics, had not been idly spent. The carpenters found sufficient employment in repairing the boats. The best bower cable had been so much damaged that they were obliged to cut forty fathoms from it. The airing of sails and other stores, which, from the leakiness of the decks and sides of the ships, were perpetually subject to be wet, had now become a troublesome part of their duty.

For some time past, even the operation of mending the sailors old jackets had risen into a duty both of difficulty and importance. It may be necessary to inform those who are unacquainted with the habits of seamen, that they are so accustomed in ships of war to be directed in the care of themselves by their officers, that they lose the very idea of fore-sight, and contract the thoughtlessness of infants. If these people had been left to their own discretion alone, the whole

whol
had
their
year
of p
such
was
cal
cold
thing
ships
the
office
time
In
ing f
that
unde
to ha
Island
pump
as th
the
till t
were
delu
whic
ficer
over
The
nor
last
head
and
water
the g
well
ets.
they
conf
15th

whole crew would have been naked, before the voyage had been half finished. It was natural to expect, that their experience, during the voyage to the North last year, would have made them sensible of the necessity of paying some attention to these matters; but if such reflections ever occurred to them, their impression was so transitory, that, upon returning to the tropical climates, their fur jackets, and the rest of their cold country clothes, were kicked about the decks as things of no value; though it was known, in both ships, that they were to make another voyage toward the pole. They were, of course, picked up by the officers; and, being put into casks, restored about this time to the owners.

In the afternoon, they observed some of the sheathing floating by the ship; and, on examination, found that twelve or fourteen feet had been washed off from under the larboard-bow, where the leak was supposed to have been; which, ever since leaving the Sandwich Islands, had kept the people almost constantly at the pumps, making twelve inches water an hour. But, as they had always been able to keep it under with the hand-pumps, it gave them no great uneasiness, till the 13th, about six in the afternoon, when they were greatly alarmed by a sudden inundation, that deluged the whole space between decks. The water, which had lodged in the coal-hole, not finding a sufficient vent into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and in a moment set every thing afloat. Their situation was indeed exceedingly distressing; nor did they immediately see any means of relief. At last they thought of cutting a hole through the bulkhead that separated the coal-hole from the fore-hole, and by that means to make a passage for the body of water into the well. As soon as a passage was made, the greatest part of the water emptied itself into the well, and enabled them to get out the rest with buckets. But the leak was now so much increased, that they were obliged to keep one half of the people constantly pumping and baling, till the noon of the 15th. The men bore, with great cheerfulness, this

excessive fatigue, which was much increased by their having no dry place to sleep in; and, on this account, they had their full allowance of grog.

The weather now became more moderate, and they were enabled to clear away the rest of the casks, and to open a passage for the water to the pumps.

The sudden alteration from the sultry heat which they experienced the beginning of this month to the extreme cold which they now felt, was attended with great inconvenience to them.

On the 18th, they had a brisk gale that split almost all the sails. To add to their difficulties, the sea was in general so rough, and the ships so leaky, that the sail-makers had no place to repair the sails in, except Captain Clerk's apartments, which in his declining state of health, was a serious inconvenience to him.

In the afternoon of the 21st, they saw a whale and a land-bird; and in the afternoon, the water looking muddy, they sounded, but got no ground with an hundred and forty fathoms of line.

On the 22d, the cold was exceedingly severe, and the ropes were so frozen, that it was with difficulty they could force them through the blocks.

On the 23d, at six in the morning, the land appeared in mountains covered with snow, and extending from North three quarters East to South West, a high conical rock, bearing South West three quarters West, at three or four leagues distance. The whole scene was entirely covered with snow, except the sides of some of the cliffs, which rose top abruptly from the sea for the snow to lie upon them.

From the 24th till the 28th, the ship appeared to be a complete mass of ice; the shrouds were so incrustrated with it, as to measure in circumference more than double their usual size; and, in short, the experience of the oldest seaman among us had never met with any thing like the continued showers of fleet, and the extreme cold which they now encountered. Some of the crew were frost-bitten, and others laid up with bad colds. Here they lost sight of the Discovery; but, as they

they
gav
C
clea
sam
noo
with
Nor
the
is
it;
F
fou
of
pas
Gre
cies
Gre
the
Pet
giv
of
dis
hut
ty;
the
or
to
ger
the
abl
tre
ver
the
gre
any
and
bo
ha
ma

they were now so near the place of rendezvous, this gave them no great uneasiness.

On the 28th in the morning, the weather at last cleared, and the wind fell to a light breeze from the same quarter as before. About three in the afternoon, a fair wind sprung up from the Southward, with which we stood in for Awatska Bay. On the North head there is a look-out house, which, when the Russians expect any of their ships upon the coast, is used as a light-house. There was a flag-staff on it; but they saw no sign of any person being there.

Having passed the mouth of the bay, which is about four miles long, they opened a large circular basin of twenty-five miles in circumference; and at half past four, came to on anchor in six fathoms water. Great flocks of wild-fowl were seen of various species; likewise ravens, eagles, and large flights of Greenland pigeons. They examined every corner of the bay with glasses, in search of the town of St. Peter and St. Paul; which, according to the accounts given at Oonalaska, they had conceived to be a place of some strength and consideration. At length they discovered a few miserable houses and some conical huts, raised on poles, amounting in all to about thirty; which, from their situation, notwithstanding all the respect they wished to entertain for a Russian *ostrog*, or town, they were under the necessity of concluding to be Petropaulowska. However, in justice to the generous and hospitable treatment they found here, their disappointment proved to be more of a laughable than a serious nature. For in this wretched extremity of the earth, barricaded with ice, and covered with summer snow, in a poor miserable port, they met with feelings of humanity, joined to a greatness of mind, which would have done honour to any nation or climate.

During the night much ice drifted with the tide, and at day light, Captain King was sent with the boats to examine the bay, and deliver the letters they had brought from Oonalaska to the Russian Commander. Having proceeded as far as they were able with

with the boats, they got upon the ice, which extended near half a mile from the shore.

The inhabitants had not yet seen either the ship or the boats; for even after they had got on the ice, they could not perceive any signs of a living creature in the town. They sunk at every step almost knee deep in the snow, and though they found tolerable footing at the bottom, yet the weak parts of the ice not being discoverable, they were constantly exposed to the risk of breaking through it. This accident at last actually happened to Captain King; for stepping on quickly over a suspicious spot, in order to press with less weight upon it, he came upon a second before he could stop himself, which broke under him, and in he fell. Luckily, he rose clear of the ice; and a man that was a little way behind with a boat-hook throwing it out, he by that means was enabled to get upon firm ice again.

When they were within a quarter of a mile of the *ostrog*, they perceived a body of armed men marching towards them. The officer who commanded them halted within a few yards of them, and drew up his men in a martial and good order. Ismyloff's letters were delivered to him, and Captain King endeavoured to make him understand, as well as he could, that they were English, and had brought them papers from Oonalashka. He then began to conduct them towards the village.

Though he was all this time in his wet clothes shivering with cold, yet it was, he says, impossible not to be diverted with this military parade. At length they arrived at the house of the Commanding Officer of the party, into which they were ushered; and after no small stir in giving orders, and disposing of the military without doors, their host made his appearance. One of Ismyloff's letters was now opened, and the other sent off, by a special messenger, to Belcheretsk, a town on the West side of the peninsula of Kamtschatka, where the Russian Commander of this province usually resides.

It now appeared that the panic with which the discovery had struck them, had been very considerable. The garrison was immediately put under arms. Two small field pieces were placed at the entrance of the Commander's house, and pointed toward the boats; and shot, powder, and lighted matches, were all ready at hand.

The officer, in whose house they were entertained, was a Serjeant, and the Commander of the *ostrog*. Nothing could exceed the kindness and hospitality of his behaviour, after he had recovered from the alarm occasioned by their arrival. After Captain King had changed his clothes, which the Serjeant's civility enabled him to do, they were invited to sit down to dinner. As there was not time to prepare soup and *bouilli*, they had in their stead some cold beef sliced, with hot water poured over it. They had next a large bird roasted, of a species with which they were unacquainted, but of a very excellent taste. After having eaten a part of this, it was taken off, and they were served with fish dressed two different ways. Their liquor was of the kind called by the Russians *quass*, and was much the worse part of the entertainment. As there was unfortunately no one in the place that could talk any other language except Russian or Kamtschadale, they found the utmost difficulty in comprehending the information meant to be conveyed to them. They conceived the amount of the intelligence to be, that they could have supplies at Bolcheretsk, but not where they were.

It was now time for them to take their leave; and a sledge, drawn by five dogs, with a driver, was immediately provided for each party. The sailors were highly delighted with this mode of conveyance; and what diverted them still more was, that the two boat-hooks had also a sledge appropriated to themselves. These sledges are so light, that they went with great expedition, and perfect safety, over the ice, which it would have been impossible for them, with all their caution, to have passed on foot.

On their return, they found the boats towing the ship toward the village; and, at seven they got close to the ice, and moored. Next morning the carpenters were set to work to stop the leak, which had given so much trouble during the last run. While they were absent, several of the ships companies went a shooting, but they had indifferent success; though the bay swarmed with flocks of ducks of various kinds, and Greenland pigeons, yet they were so shy, that they did not kill any.

In the morning of the 1st of May, seeing the Discovery standing into the bay, a boat was immediately sent to her assistance; and in the afternoon she moored close by the Resolution.

Bolcheretsk, by the usual route, is about one hundred and thirty-five English miles from St. Peter and St. Paul's. The dispatches were sent off in a sledge drawn by dogs, on the 29th, about noon. And the answer arrived on the second of May; so that they were only a little more than three days and a half in performing a journey of two hundred and seventy miles.

The return of the Commander's answer was, however, concealed for the present.

About ten o'clock in the forenoon, they saw several sledges driving down the edge of the ice, and sent a boat to conduct the persons who were in them on board. One of these was a Russian merchant from Bolcheretsk, named Fedositsch, and the other a German, called Port, who had brought a letter from Major Behm, the Commander of Kamtschatka, to Captain Clerke. They afterwards found, that Ismyloff, in his letter to the Commander, had misrepresented them, for what reasons they could not conceive. Notwithstanding this information an uncommon degree of satisfaction was visible in their countenances, on the German's finding a person on board with whom he could converse. This was Mr. Webber, who spoke that language exceedingly well. Mr. Port being introduced to Captain Clerke, delivered to him the Commander's letter, which was written in German.

German, inviting him and his officers to Bolcheretzk. Mr. Port, at the same time, acquainted him, that the Major had conceived a very wrong idea of the size of the ships, and of the service they were engaged in; Isymloff, in his letter, having represented them as two small English packet boats, and cautioned him to be on his guard; insinuating, that he suspected them to be no better than pirates. In consequence of this letter, he said, there had been various conjectures formed about them at Bolcheretzk.

They were much diverted with the fears and apprehensions of these good people.

Being now enabled to converse with the Russians, by the aid of an interpreter, the first inquiries were directed to the means of procuring a supply of fresh provisions, and naval stores. On inquiry, it appeared that the whole stock of live cattle, which the country about the bay could furnish, amounted only to two heifers; and these the serjeant very readily promised to procure. Their applications were next made to the merchant, but the terms, which he offered were so exorbitant, that Captain Clerke thought it necessary to send an officer to visit the Commander at Bolcheretzk, and to inquire into the price of stores at that place.

Captain Clerke having thought proper to fix on Mr. King for this business received orders, together with Mr. Webber, who was to accompany him as an interpreter, to be ready to set out the next day.

Captain Gore was now added to the party, and they were attended by Messrs. Port and Fedositsch, with two cossacks, and were provided, by their conductors, with warm furred clothing; a precaution which they found very necessary.

They were pushed forward by six men, with long poles, for ten hours. The fatigue they had undergone obliged them to give up all thoughts of continuing their journey that evening.

They set out as soon as it was light, in the morning, and had not advanced far, before they were met by the *Tsion*, or Chief of Karatchin, who had been apprized

apprized of their coming, and had provided canoes that were lighter, and better contrived for navigating the higher parts of the river. A commodious vessel, consisting of two canoes lashed close together with cross spars, lined with bear-skins, and furnished with fur cloaks, was also provided. They now went on very rapidly. At ten they got to the *ostrog*.

This *ostrog* was pleasantly situated by the side of the river: they were conducted to the dwelling of the *Toion*, who was a plain decent man. His house, like all the rest in this country, was divided into two apartments. A long narrow table, with a bench round it, was all the furniture in the outer; and the household stuff of the inner, which was the kitchen, was not less simple and scanty. But the kind attention of their host, and the hearty welcome they received, more than compensated for the poverty of his lodgings.

Whilst they were at dinner in this miserable hut, the guests of a people with whose existence they had before been scarcely acquainted, and at the extremity of the habitable globe, a solitary, half-worn pewter spoon, whose shape was familiar to them, attracted their attention; it was stamped on the back with the word *London*. Those who have experienced the effects that long absence and extreme distance from their native country produce on the mind, will readily conceive the pleasure such trifling incidents can give.

They were now to quit the river, and perform the next part of their journey on sledges. After supper they retired to rest but were much disturbed by the melancholy howlings of the dogs, which continued all the time their baggage was lashing upon the sledges; but as soon as they were yoked, this changed into a light cheerful yelping, which intirely ceased the instant they marched off. But before they set out, the reader may expect to be made more particularly acquainted with this curious mode of travelling.

One of these Sledges was brought over by Mr. King, and it is now in the possession of Sir Ashton Lever.

The body is about four feet and a half long, and a foot wide, made in the form of a crescent, of light tough wood, strongly bound together with wicker-work; it is supported by four legs, about two feet high, which rest on two long flat pieces of wood, five or six inches broad, extending a foot at each end beyond the body of the sledge. They are seldom used to carry more than one person at a time, who sits aside, resting his feet on the lower part of the sledge, and carrying his provisions and other necessaries behind him. The dogs are usually five in number, yoked two and two, with a leader. The leader is always trained up with care and attention; some of them, on account of their docility and steadiness, are valued at forty roubles, (or seven pounds sterling.) The driver is provided with a crooked stick, which answers the purpose of whip and reins; as by striking it into the snow, he is enabled to moderate the speed of the dogs, he also chastises them by throwing it at them, and their dexterity in picking it up again is very remarkable; they say, that if the driver should happen to lose his stick, the dogs will instantly perceive it; and directly run a-head full speed, and never stop till they are quite spent.

The dogs are fed, during the winter, on the offal of dried and stinking fish; but are always deprived of this miserable food a day before they set out on a journey, and never suffered to eat before they reach the end of it. It is said they will perform a journey of one hundred and twenty miles without eating. These dogs are in shape somewhat like the Pomeranian breed, but considerably larger.

The party consisted, in all, of ten sledges. That in which Captain Gore was carried, was made of two lashed together, and abundantly provided with furs and bear skins; it had ten dogs, yoked four abreast; as had also some of those that were heavy laden with baggage.

When they had proceeded about four miles, it began to rain; which adding to the darkness of the

night, threw them all into confusion. It was at last agreed, that they should remain where they were till day-light. About three o'clock they were called on to set out; after encountering many difficulties, which were principally occasioned by the bad condition of the road, at two in the afternoon they got safe to an *ostrog*, called Natchee kin.

Natchee kin is a very inconsiderable *ostrog*; they were received here in the same hospitable manner as at Karatchin, and in the afternoon they went to visit a remarkable hot spring they saw at some distance, the stream arising from it, as from a boiling caldron; and as they approached, perceived the air had a strong sulphureous smell: there were some small ones equally hot. The water flowing from these springs is collected in a small bathing pond, and afterwards forms a little rivulet; which falls into the river. The bath they said had wrought great cures in several disorders.

The next morning they embarked on the Bolchoireka in canoes. The country on each side was very romantic, the river running between mountains of the most craggy and barren aspect, where there was nothing to diversify the scene but now and then the sight of a bear, and the flights of wild-fowl. They slept on the banks of the river under their *marquée*, and suffered very much from the severity of the weather.

About nine in the forenoon of the 12th, they arrived at an *ostrog*, called Opatchin, which is computed to be fifty miles from Natchee kin. The remainder of their passage was performed with great facility, the river growing more rapid as they descended, and less obstructed by shoals.

As they approached the capital, they were sorry to find they were to be received in form. Decent clothes had been, for some time, a scarce commodity amongst them and their travelling dresses were made up of a burlesque mixture of European, Indian, and Kamtschadale fashions. The manner in which they were received by the Commander, was the most engaging that could be conceived.

They

They were conducted to the Commander's house, where they were received by his lady with great civility, and they had tea and other refreshments. After the first compliments were over, Mr. Webber was desired to acquaint the Major with the object of their journey, with their want of naval stores, flour, and fresh provisions, and other necessaries for their ships crews.

About seven o'clock, the Commander, conceiving they might be fatigued with their journey, and desirous of taking some repose, begged he might conduct them to their lodgings; when they were led to a very decent house.

Early in the morning, they received the compliments of the Commander, and of the principal inhabitants of the town. The Commander and Captain Shmaleff, proposed sparing half the provisions that was in the garrison, for the use of the ships, and they agreed to accept their liberality, on condition that they might be made acquainted with the price of the articles; and that Captain Clerke should give bills to the amount, upon the Victualling Office, in London. This the Major positively refused; telling them, he was certain, that he could not oblige his mistress more, than in giving every assistance in his power to her good friends and allies the English,

In return for such singular generosity, they had little to offer but their admiration and thanks. Fortunately, however, Captain Clerke had sent a set of prints and maps, belonging to the last voyage of Captain Cook, which he desired, might be presented in his name to the Commander; who being an enthusiast in every thing relating to discoveries, received it with a satisfaction which shewed, that, though a trifle, nothing could have been more acceptable.

Mr. King prevailed on his son, a young boy, to accept a silver watch; and he made his little daughter happy also, with two pair of ear-rings, of French paste. Besides these trifles, he gave Captain Shmaleff a thermometer he had used on his journey.

They dined this day at the Commander's, who had a number of dishes dressed in the English fashion, beside a great variety of others, after the Russian manner. The afternoon was employed in taking a view of the town, and of the adjacent country. Bolcheretsk is situated in a low swampy plain, that extends to the sea of Okotsk, being about forty miles long, and of a considerable breadth. There is no corn of any species; and Major Behm said, that his was the only garden that had yet been planted. There were about twenty or thirty cows; and the Major had six stout horses. These, and their dogs, are the only tame animals they possess; the necessity they are under of keeping great numbers of the latter, making it impossible to bring up any cattle, that are not in size and strength a match for them. For, during the summer season, their dogs are entirely let loose, and left to provide for themselves; which makes them so exceedingly ravenous, that they will sometimes even attack the bullocks.

The next morning they applied to the merchant Fedositsch, to purchase some tobacco for the sailors. However, this, like all other transactions of the same kind, came immediately to the Major's knowledge; and they were soon after surpris'd to find, in their house, four bags of tobacco, weighing upward of a hundred pounds each, which he begged might be presented, in the name of himself, and the garrison under his command, to the sailors. At the same time, they had sent twenty loaves of fine sugar, and as many pounds of tea, being articles they understood the officers were in want of. Captain Clerke also received a present consisting of fresh butter, honey, figs, rice, and some other little things of the same kind, attended with many wishes, that, in his infirm state of health, they might be of service. It was in vain to oppose this profusion of bounty, as they were giving away, not a share, but almost the whole stock of the garrison.

They dined this day with Captain Shmaleff, and in the afternoon, in order to vary the amusements, he

treated

treated them with an exhibition of dancing, which is intended to represent the awkward and clumsy gestures of the bear. The body was always bowed, and the knees bent, whilst the arms were used in imitating the tricks and attitudes of that animal.

They were now with great pleasure informed by the Major, upon mentioning their desire to return, that if they could stay one day longer, he would accompany them; as he should feel great pleasure in returning with them to St. Peter and St. Paul's, that he might himself assist them as much as it was in his power, in supplying all their wants.

The next morning being fixed for their departure, they retired early to their lodgings, where the first things they saw were three travelling dresses, made after the fashion of the country, which the Major had provided for them.

All the soldiers belonging to the garrison were drawn up on one side, and the male inhabitants of the town, dressed out in their best clothes, on the other; and, as soon as they came out of the house, the whole body of the people joined in a melancholy song, which, the Major told them it was usual in that country, to sing on taking leave of their friends.

In this manner they marched down to the Commander's house, preceded by the drums and music of the garrison. After partaking of some refreshment, that was prepared for them, they went down to the water-side, accompanied by the ladies.

We had dispatched a messenger to Captain Clerke, from Bolcheretsk, with an account of their extraordinary reception, and of the Major's intention of returning with them; apprizing him also of the day he might probably expect to see them. The Major was much struck at the robust and healthy appearance of the boats crews, and still more at seeing most of them without any other covering than a shirt and trowsers, although at the very moment it actually snowed.

After visiting the Captain, and taking a view of both the ships, the Major returned to dinner on board.

the Resolution; and, in the afternoon, the various curiosities that had been collected in the course of the voyage, were shewn him, and a complete assortment of every article presented to him by Captain Clerke. The sailors of both ships exhibited a great proof of their generosity and gratitude. When they were told of the handsome present of tobacco that was made them by the Major, desired, entirely of their own accord, that their grog might be stopped, and their allowance of spirits presented, on their part, to the garrison of Bolcheretsk.

Major Behm having resigned the command of Kamtschatka, intended to set out in a short time for Petersburg; and he now offered to charge himself with any dispatches they might trust to his care. This offer was accepted, and Capt. Clerke acquainted him, that he would take the liberty of sending by him some papers relating to the voyage, to be delivered to the English Ambassador, at the Russian Court, and the whole account of the discoveries down to that time, with Charts, Plans, &c. were entrusted to his care.

Short as their acquaintance had been with Major Behm, his noble and disinterested conduct had inspired them with the highest respect and esteem for him. The intrinsic value of the private presents they received from him, exclusive of the stores, must have amounted to upwards of two hundred pounds. But this generosity was exceeded by the delicacy with which all his favours were conferred. "The service in which you are employed," he would often say, "is for the general advantage of mankind, and therefore gives you a right, not merely to the offices of humanity, but to the privileges of citizens, in whatever country you may be thrown. I am sure I am acting agreeably to the wishes of my mistress, in affording you all the relief in our power; and I cannot forget either her character, or my own honour, so much, as to barter for the performance of a duty.

On

On the 15th, the beach being clear of ice, the people were sent to haul the seine, and caught an abundant supply of fine flat fish for both the ships companies. Indeed, from this time, during the whole of their stay in the harbour, they were absolutely overpowered with the quantities of fish which came in from every quarter.

The snow now began to disappear very rapidly, and abundance of wild garlic, celery, and nettle tops were gathered for the use of the crews. The birch-trees were also tapped, and the sweet juice, which they yielded in great quantities, was constantly mixed with the mens allowance of brandy.

The next day a small bullock, which had been procured for the ships companies by the serjeant, was killed. It was served out to both crews for their Sunday's dinner, being the first piece of fresh beef they had tasted since their departure from the Cape of Good Hope in December, 1776, a period of near two years and a half.

This evening died John Macintosh, the carpenter's mate, after having laboured under a dysentry for a considerable time.

On the first of June they received a considerable quantity of flour; and the men were put in full allowance, with which they were supplied from the stores of St. Peter and St. Paul's.

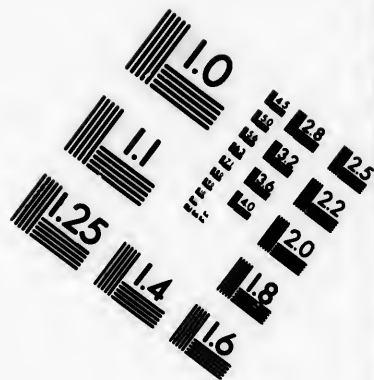
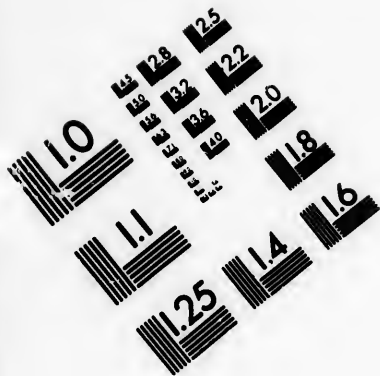
June 4th, they fired twenty one guns in honor of the day.

On the 6th, twenty head of cattle, of a moderate size, were sent by the Commander's orders from the Verchnei *ostrog*, which is near a hundred miles from this place, in a direct line.

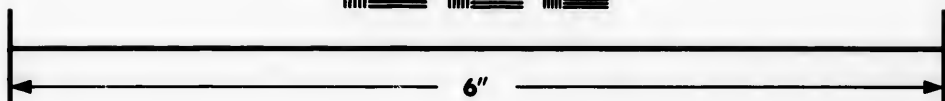
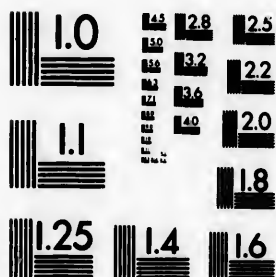
Before day-light, on the 15th, they were surpris'd with a rumbling noise, resembling distant hollow thunder; and, when the day broke, they found the decks and sides of the ships covered with a fine dust like emery, near an inch thick. The air, at the same time, continued loaded and darkened with this substance; and, toward the *volcano* mountain, situated to the North of the harbour, it was so thick and black, that

that





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590
(716) 872-4503

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99

that they could not distinguish the body of the hill. About twelve o'clock, and during the afternoon, the explosions became louder, and were followed by showers of cinders, which were, in general about the size of peas; though many were picked up from the deck larger than a hazel nut. Along with the cinders fell several small stones, which had undergone no change from the action of fire. In the evening they had dreadful thunder and lightning, which, with the darkness of the atmosphere, and the sulphureous smell of the air, produced altogether a most awful and terrifying effect. They were, at this time, about eight leagues from the foot of the mountain.

The snow had now disappeared, and the sides of the hills were covered with a beautiful verdure.

The *volcano* was still seen throwing up immense volumes of smoke; and they had no soundings with one hundred and fifty fathoms, at the distance of four leagues from the shore.

On the 22d, they passed a dead whale, which emitted a horrid stench, perceivable at upward of a league's distance; it was covered with a great number of sea-birds that were feasting on it.

On the 24th they saw some Gulls, and were witnesses to the disgusting mode of feeding of the arctic gull, from whence it is called the parasite.*

At noon on the 6th of July, they passed a considerable number of large masses of ice, and at three in the afternoon, they fell in with an extensive body of it. This sight gave great discouragement to their hopes of advancing much farther Northward this year, than they had done the preceding.

Having little wind in the afternoon, they hoisted out the boats in pursuit of the sea-horses, which were in great numbers on the detached pieces of ice; but they soon returned without success; these animals be-

* This bird, which is somewhat larger than the common gull, pursues the latter kind whenever it meets them; the gull, after flying for some time, with loud screams, and evident marks of great terror, drops its dung, which its pursuer immediately darts at, and catches before it falls into the sea.

ing exceedingly shy, and before they could come within gun-shot always making their retreat into the water.

On the 10th, the people were more successful than they had been before, having shot three large ones, and a young one, besides killing and wounding several others. They were witnesses of several remarkable instances of parental affection in these animals. On the approach of the boats toward the ice, they all took their cubs under their fins, and endeavoured to escape with them into the sea. They afterward observed them bringing them, at times, above the surface, as if for air, and again diving with a dreadful bellowing. One female, in particular, whose young had been destroyed, and taken into the boat, became so enraged, that she attacked the cutter, and struck her two tusks through the bottom of it.

We continued to steer Northward, till the 13th, when they again found themselves close in with a solid field of ice, to which they could see no limits from the mast head. This, at once, dashed all hopes of penetrating farther.

Captain Clerke now resolved to make one more, and final attempt on the American coast, for Baffin's or Hudson's Bay. Accordingly they kept working the remaining part of the day to the windward.

On the 16th in the forenoon, they found themselves embayed; the ice having taken a sudden turn to the South East, and in one compact body surrounding them on all sides, except on the South quarter. They therefore hauled to the Southward; they were now about twenty five leagues from the coast of America.

On the 18th, at five in the morning, they saw several whales. It is remarkable, that though they saw no sea horses on the body of the ice, yet they were in herds, and in greater numbers on the detachments, than they had observed before. About nine in the evening, a white bear was seen swimming close by the Discovery; it afterward made to the ice, on which were also two others.

On the 19th, at one in the morning, the weather clearing up, they were so completely embayed, that there was no opening left, but to the South. They were never able to penetrate farther North than at this time, and this was five leagues short of the point to which they advanced last season.

In the afternoon saw two white bears in the water, to which they immediately gave chase in the jolly boat, and had the good fortune to kill them both. The larger, which probably was the dam of the younger, being shot first, the other would not quit it, though it might easily have escaped on the ice whilst the men were reloading, but remained swimming about till, after being fired upon several times, it was shot dead. One weighed 436 pounds, the other 256 pounds.

These animals afforded a few excellent meals of fresh meat. The flesh had indeed a strong fishy taste, but was in every respect infinitely superior to that of the sea-horse.

At eight in the morning of the 21st, they saw the American coast to the South East, at the distance of eight or ten leagues, and hauled in for it; but were stopped again by the ice.

Thus, a connected, solid field of ice, rendering every effort to a nearer approach to the land fruitless, and joining, as was judged, to it, they took a last farewell of a North East passage to Old England. Here Captain King gives in Captain Clerke's own words, the reasons of this his final determination, as well as of his future plans; and this the rather, as it is, the last transaction his health permitted him to write down.

“ It is now impossible to proceed the least farther
 “ to the Northward upon this coast (America); and
 “ it is equally as improbable that this amazing mass
 “ of ice should be dissolved by the few remaining
 “ summer-weeks which will terminate this season;
 “ but it will continue, it is to be believed, as it now
 “ is, an insurmountable barrier to every attempt we
 “ can possibly make. I, therefore, think it the best

“ step

“ ste
 “ to
 “ try
 “ fa
 “ do
 “ m
 “ fo
 “ fa
 Th
 21st
 ten a
 the fo
 excep
 on th
 attem
 but r
 vere
 she be
 and in
 broad
 of ice

In v
 at noc
 gloom
 four
 and l
 for h
 guns
 after.
 upon
 and th
 throu

On
 out th
 in pr
 them
 of fo
 It v
 repair
 shoul

" step that can be taken, for the good of the service,
 " to trace the Sea over to the Asiatic coast, and to
 " try if I can find any opening that will admit me
 " farther North; if not, to see what more is to be
 " done upon that coast, where I hope, yet cannot
 " much flatter myself, to meet with better success;
 " for the sea is now so choaked with ice, that a pas-
 " sage, I fear, is totally out of the question."

They now continued, during the afternoon of the
 21st of July, to steer to the West North West. At
 ten at night, discovering the main body of ice through
 the fog, right ahead, and almost close on every side,
 except to the South West, they tack'd and stood
 on that direction. At length, they were obliged to
 attempt to force a passage, which they accomplished,
 but not without subjecting the ship to some very se-
 vere shocks. The Discovery was less successful. For,
 she became so entangled, that her way was stopped,
 and immediately dropping bodily to leeward, she fell,
 broadside foremost, on the edge of a considerable body
 of ice.

In this dangerous situation the Resolution saw them
 at noon, about three miles distance. To add to the
 gloomy apprehensions which began to arise; at half past
 four in the afternoon, the weather becoming thick
 and hazy, they lost sight of her. Their concerns
 for her safety did not cease till nine, when her
 guns were heard in answer to theirs; and soon
 after, being hailed by her, they were informed, that
 upon the change of wind, the ice began to separate;
 and that, setting all their sails, they forced a passage
 through it.

On the 24th, at four in the afternoon, they hoisted
 out the boats in pursuit of the sea-horses, which were
 in prodigious herds on every side, and killed ten of
 them; which were as many as they could make use
 of for eating, or for converting into lamp oil.

It was now determined to sail for Awatska Bay, to
 repair our damages there; and before the winter
 should set in, to explore the coast of Japan.

I will

I will not endeavour to conceal the joy that brightened this resolution; for it had an amazing effect upon the sailors, who could not conceal their joy as soon as they were informed of it. They were all heartily sick of a navigation full of danger, and in which the utmost perseverance had not been repaid with the smallest probability of success. They now turned their faces home, after an absence of three years, with a delight and satisfaction, as fully enjoyed; as if they had been already in sight of the Land's-end.

On the 28th and 29th, the wind being contrary, they made but slow progress to the Southward, and had no land in sight till seven in the evening of the 30th; from which time, to the 17th of August, nothing interesting occurred.

Captain Clerke was now no longer able to get out of his bed; he therefore desired, that the officers would receive their orders from Mr. King, and directed that they should proceed, with all speed, to Awatka Bay.

On the 21st, at half past five in the morning, they saw a very high peaked mountain on the coast of Kamtschatka, called Cheepoonskoi Mountain, twenty-five or thirty leagues distant.

On the 22d of August, 1779, at nine o'clock in the morning, departed this life Captain Charles Clerke, in the thirty eighth year of his age. He died of a consumption, which had evidently commenced before he left England, and of which he had lingered during the whole voyage. His very gradual decay had long made him a melancholy object to his friends; yet the equanimity with which he bore it, the constant flow of good spirits, which continued to the last hour, and a cheerful resignation to his fate, afforded them some consolation. It was impossible not to feel a more than common degree of compassion for a person, whose whole life had been a continued scene of those difficulties and hardships, to which a seaman's occupation is subject, and under which he at last sunk. He was brought up to the Navy from his earliest youth

youth, and had been in several actions during the war; which began in 1756, particularly in that between the *Bellona* and *Courageux*, where being stationed in the mizen-top, he was carried overboard with the mast, but was taken up without having received any hurt. He was Midshipman in the *Dolphin*, commanded by Com. Byron, on her first voyage round the world, and afterward served on the *American* station. In 1768, he made his second voyage round the world, in the *Endeavour*, as Master's Mate, and by the promotion, which took place during the expedition, he returned a Lieutenant. His third voyage round the world was in the *Resolution*, of which he was appointed the Second Lieutenant; and soon after his return, in 1775, he was promoted to the rank of Master and Commander; when the present expedition was ordered to be fitted out, he was appointed to the *Discovery*, to accompany Captain Cook; and by the death of the latter, succeeded, as has been already mentioned, to the chief command.

It would be doing his memory extreme injustice not to say, that during the short time the expedition was under his direction, he was most zealous and anxious for its success. His health, about the time the principal command devolved up him, began to decline very rapidly, and was every way unequal to encounter the rigors of a high Northern climate. But the vigour and activity of his mind had, in no shape, suffered by the decay of his body; and though he knew, that by delaying his return to a warmer climate, he was giving up the only chance that remained for his recovery, yet, careful and jealous to the last degree, that a regard to his own situation should never bias his judgment to the prejudice of the service, he persevered in the search of a passage, till it was the opinion of every officer in both ships, that it was impracticable, and that any farther attempts would not only be fruitless, but dangerous.

Mr. King sent Mr. Williamson to acquaint Captain Gore with the death of Captain Clerke, and received a letter in return, ordering him to use all his endeavours

yours to keep in company with the Discovery; and, in case of a separation, to make the best way to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul; where they anchored, before three in the afternoon, on the 24th, with their ensign half staff up, on account of carrying the body of their late Captain; and were soon followed by the Discovery.

The irruption of the volcano, which was so violent when they sailed out of the bay, had done no damage here, notwithstanding stones had fallen at the *ofrog*, of the size of a goose's egg.

In the morning of the 25th, Captain Gore made out the new commissions, in consequence of Captain Clerke's death, appointing himself to the command of the Resolution: and Mr. King to the command of the Discovery; and Mr. Lanyon, Master's Mate of the Resolution, was promoted to the vacant Lieutenancy. These promotions produced several other arrangements of course.

Both the ships, upon examination, suffered much injury from the ice, and considerable repairs were become indispensable.

As the season was now so far advanced, they were fearful lest any delay or hindrance should arise to Captain Gore's farther views of discovery, and therefore gave orders that no more should be done to them.

On Sunday afternoon, August the 29th, they paid the last offices to Captain Clerke. The officers and men of both ships walked in procession to the grave, whilst the ships fired minute guns; and the service being ended, the marines fired three volleys. He was interred under a tree, which stands on a rising ground, in the valley to the North side of the harbour, where the hospital and store houses are situated. All the Russians in the garrison were assembled, and attended with great respect and solemnity.

They had a constant course of dry weather till this day, when there came on a heavy rain, accompanied with strong squalls of wind, which obliged them to strike their yards and topmasts.

The

The 12th, being Sunday, was kept as a day of rest; but the weather unfortunately continuing foul, the men could not derive the advantage from it wished, by gathering the berries, and taking other pastime on shore.

On Wednesday they had finished the stowage of the holds; but the cattle were not yet arrived from Verchnei, and as fresh provisions were the most important articles of their wants, they could not think of taking their departure without them.

On the 17th, they set out on a hunting party; bears were their object. They directed their course to the Northward, toward a pool of water that lies near the mouth of the river Paratounca, and which was a known haunt of the bears. They had scarce landed, when unfortunately the wind changed to the Eastward, and destroyed all hopes of coming up with their game; for the Kamtschadales assured them, that it was in vain to expect to meet with bears, whilst they were to the windward; owing to their being possessed of an uncommon acuteness in scenting their pursuers, which enabled them, under such circumstances, to avoid the danger, whilst it is yet at a very great distance.

Next morning they crossed the bay, and though they saw several bears at a distance, they could never contrive to get within shot of them. Their diversion was therefore changed to spearing of salmon, which they saw pushing in great numbers through the surf into a small river. It fell out very opportunely that the water afforded them a little prey; for besides their ill success in the chase by land, they had also been disappointed in their expectations of shooting wild fowl, on a supply of which they had in some measure depended for subsistence; and on its failure, began to think that they had been full long absent from head-quarters.

It was night before they reached the ships, and they had then been twelve hours upon their legs. However, they forgot the fatigues and ill success of their expedition over a good supper.

The 23d, being the anniversary of his Majesty's coronation, twenty-one guns were fired, and the handsomest feast their situation would allow of, was prepared in honour of the day. As they were sitting down to dinner, the arrival of Captain Shmaleff was announced. This was a very agreeable surprize, because he arrived so opportunely to partake of the good fare and festivity of the occasion. He acquainted them that their not having received the sixteen head of black cattle, was owing to the very heavy rains at Verchngi, which had prevented their setting out; the next day, on coming on board the Resolution, he was saluted with eleven guns. Specimens of all their curiosities were presented to him; and Captain Gore added to them a gold watch and a fowling-piece.

The next day he was entertained on board the Discovery; and on the 25th, he took leave, to return to Woicheretk. He could not be prevailed on to lengthen his visit.

The next day, Captain King set on foot another hunting party, and put himself under the direction of the Clerk of the parish, who was a celebrated bear-hunter. They arrived by sun-set at the side of one of the larger lakes. The next step was to conceal themselves as much as possible. They had not lain long in ambush before they had the pleasure to hear the growling of bears in different parts round about, and their expectations were soon gratified by the sight of one of them in the water, which seemed to be swimming directly to the place where they lay concealed, and when the animal had advanced about fifteen yards, three fired at it pretty nearly at the same time. The bear immediately turned short on one side, and made a noise which could not properly be called roaring, nor growling, nor yelling, but was a mixture of all three, and horrible beyond description. It retreated to some thick bushes, at a little distance, and continued to make the same terrible noise, and though the Kamtschadales were persuaded it was mortally wounded, they thought it most advisable not to rouse it again.

for

for the present. It was, at this time, past nine o'clock, and the night threatening a change of weather, they returned home, and deferred the gratification of their curiosity till morning, when they found the bear dead in the place to which it had been watched. It proved to be a female, and beyond the common size.

Here Captain King entertains the reader with a description of the manner in which this sport is conducted at Kamtschatka.

When the natives come to the ground frequented by the bears, which they contrive to reach about sunset, the first step is to look for their tracks, to examine which are the freshest and best situated with a view to concealment, and taking aim at the bear, either as he is passing by, or advancing in front, or going from them. The place of ambuscade being determined upon, the hunters next fix, in the ground the crutches upon which their firelocks are made to rest, pointing them in the direction they mean to make their shot. This done, they kneel or lie down, as the circumstances of the cover require; and, with their bear-spears by their side, wait for their game. These precautions are chiefly taken in order to make sure of their mark; for if the bear be not rendered incapable of pursuit by the first shot, the consequences are often fatal. He immediately makes toward the place from whence the noise and smoke issue, and attacks his adversaries with great fury. It is impossible for them to reload, as the animal is seldom at more than twelve or fifteen yards distance when he is fired at; so that if he does not fall, they immediately put themselves in a posture to receive him upon their spears; and their safety greatly depends on their giving him a mortal stab, as he first comes upon them.

When they are very hungry, it is also dangerous to come in their way; they will pursue the natives by the scent.

The Kamtschadales never venture to fire upon a young bear when the mother is near: for, if the cub drop, she becomes enraged to a degree little short of

grishels, and if she get sight of the enemy, will only quit her revenge with her life. On the contrary, if she can be shot, the cubs will not leave her side, even after she has been dead a long time; but continue about her, shewing, by a variety of affecting actions and gestures, marks of the deepest affliction, and thus become an easy prey to the hunters.

The Kamtschadales very thankfully acknowledge their obligations to the bears for what little advancement they have hitherto made, either in the sciences or polite arts. They confess that they owe to them all their skill both in physic and surgery; that by remarking with what herbs these animals rub their wounds they have received, and what they have recourse to when sick and languid, they have become acquainted with most of the simples in use among them, either in the way of internal medicine, or external application: they acknowledge the bears likewise for their dancing masters. Indeed the evidence of the bears' stances puts this out of dispute; for the bear-dance of the Kamtschadales is an exact counterpart of every attitude and gesture peculiar to this animal, through its various functions; and this is the foundation and ground-work of all their other dances, and what they value themselves most upon.

No occurrence worth mentioning took place till the 30th, when Captain Gore went to Paratouka to put up in the church there, an escutcheon, prepared by Mr. Weber, with an inscription upon it, setting forth Captain Clarke's age and rank, and the object of the expedition in which he was engaged at the time of his decease. They were affixed to the tree, under which he was buried, a board, with an inscription upon it to the same effect.

On the 5th, they received from Bolcheretsk, a fresh supply of sea sugar, and tobacco.

At four in the afternoon of the 9th, they anchored; but whilst they were, with great difficulty, weighing their last anchor, Captain King was told that the drummer of the marines had left the boat, and that he was in the hands of the Kamtschadal women, who therefore

therefore got the serjeant to send a party of soldiers, in different directions, in search of him, whilst some of the sailors went to a well known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where they found him, and brought him on board. They now took their leave of this place.

Kamtschatka is the name of a peninsula situated on the Eastern coast of Asia, running nearly North and South.

It is bounded on the North by the country of the Koriacks; to the South and East, by the North Pacific Ocean; and to the West, by the sex of Okotisk. A chain of high mountains stretches the whole length off the country, from North to South, dividing it nearly into two equal parts; from whence a great number of rivers take their rise, and empty themselves on each side, into the Pacific Ocean and the sea of Okotisk.

This country is barren in the extreme, and bears a great resemblance to Newfoundland.

The first time our voyagers saw it, was about the beginning of May, 1779, when the whole face of it was covered with snow, from six to eight feet deep. On their return, the 24th of August, the foliage of the trees, and all sorts of vegetables, seemed to be in the utmost state of perfection; but at the beginning of October, the tops of the hills were again covered with new-fallen snow, the wind continuing Westerly.

Major Behm told them that the cold and inclemency of the winter of 1779 was such, that, for several weeks, all intercourse between the inhabitants was intirely stopped, every one being afraid to stir even from one house to another, for fear of being frost-bitten.

To avoid the hurricanes, and severe winters, they have subterraneous habitations.

This peninsula abounds in volcanos, of which only three have, for some time past, been subject to eruptions. They have already mentioned that which is situated in the neighbourhood of Awatka. Besides this,

this, there are others not less remarkable, according to the account given of them by Krascheninicoff.

The *volcano* of Tolbatchick is situated on a neck of ground between the river of Kamtschatka and Tolbatchick. The mountain, from the summit of which the eruptions proceed, is of a considerable height, and terminates in pointed rocks. In the beginning of the year 1739, there issued from it a whirlwind of flames, which reduced to ashes the forests of the neighbouring mountains. This was succeeded by a cloud of smoke, which spread over, and darkened the whole country, till it was dissipated by a shower of cinders, that covered the ground to the distance of thirty miles. Mr. Krascheninicoff, who was at this time on a journey from Bolchoireka to the Kamtschatka *ostrog*, at no great distance from the mountain, relates, that the eruption was preceded by an alarming sound in the woods, which he thought the forerunner of some dreadful storm or hurricane, till three shocks of an earthquake, at about a minute's interval each, convinced him of its real cause; but that he was hindered from approaching nearer the mountain, by the cinders that fell, and prevented him from proceeding on his journey.

The third *volcano* is on the top of the highest mountain of Kamtschatka. A thick smoke never ceases to ascend from its summit, and it has frequently eruptions, of the most violent and dreadful kind, some of which were much talked of, and seemed to be fresh in the memories of the Kamtschadales.

The country is likewise said to contain numerous springs of hot water. Krascheninicoff makes mention of two very extraordinary pits or wells, at the bottom of which the water is seen to boil as in a caldron, with prodigious force and impetuosity; at the same time a dreadful noise issues out of them, and so thick a vapour, that a man cannot be seen through it.

The real riches of this country must always consist in the number of wild animals it produces; and no labour can ever be turned to so good account as what is employed upon their furreries. Their animals

animals are the common fox; the stoat, or *ermine*; the *xibeline*, or sable; the *isatis*, or arctic fox; the varying hare; the mountain rat, or earless marmot; the weasel; the glutton or *wolverene*; the *argali*, or wild sheep; rein-deer; bears; wolves; dogs.

The fox is the most general object of the chase; and they are found in great numbers, and of various of colours. The most common is the same in species with the European; but some are of a dark chestnut, some black; others of a stone colour; and there were a few quite white. Their fur is exceedingly thick and fine, and of a quality much superior to those of Siberia or America.

The skin of the glutton, or *wolverene* is here in the highest repute; inasmuch, that a Kamtschadale looks upon himself as most richly attired, when a small quantity of this fur is seen upon him. The women adorn their hair with its pats, which are white, and considered as an extraordinary piece of finery; and they have a superstitious opinion, that the angels are clad with the skins of those animals. It is said, that this creature is easily tamed, and taught a number of pleasant tricks.*

All the bears Captain King saw were of a dark brown colour; they are seldom visible in the winter months; †

Their skins are exceedingly useful. They make both excellent warm matresses and coverings for their beds; comfortable bonnets and gloves, and good collars for their dogs harness. Their flesh, and particularly the fat, is considered as great delicacies.

* Kratschenicoff relates, that this small animal frequently destroys deer, and the wild mountain-sheep, in the following way; they scatter at the Bottom of the trees bark and moss, which those animals are fond of; and whilst they are pickling it up, drop suddenly upon them, and fastening behind the head, suck out their eyes.

† The Koriacks make use of a very simple method of catching bears. They suspend, between the forks of a tree, a running noose, within which they fasten a bait, which the animal, endeavouring to pull away, is caught sometimes by the neck, and sometimes by the paw.

It has been already observed, that the dogs of this country are, in shape and mien, exceedingly like the Pomeranian, with this difference, that they are a great deal larger, and the hair somewhat coarser. They are of a variety of colours; but the most general is a light dun, or dirty cream-colour. Toward the end of May, they are all turned loose, and left to provide for themselves through the summer; being sure to return to their respective homes when the snow begins to fall. Their food, in the winter, consists entirely of the head, entrails, and back bones of salmon; which are put aside, and dried for that purpose; and with this diet, they are fed but sparingly. The number of dogs must needs be very great, since five are yoked to a sledge, and a sledge carries but one person; so that on their journey to Bolcheretsk, they required no fewer than an hundred and thirty-nine, at the two stages of Karatchin and Natchikin. It is also to be remarked, that they never make use of bitches for the draft, nor dogs, but those that are cut. The whelps are trained to this business, by being tied to stakes with light leathern thongs, which are made to stretch, and having their victuals placed at a proper distance out of their reach; so that, by constantly pulling and labouring, in order to come at their food, they acquire both the strength of limbs, and the habit of drawing, that are necessary for their future destination.

In the woods through which they passed, were seen several eagles of a prodigious size; but of what species they were, they could not pretend to determine. Of the hawk, falcon, and bustard-kind, there are great numbers.

Whales are frequently seen, both in the sea of Okotisk, and on the side of the Eastern ocean, and, when caught, are turned to a variety of uses. Of the skin they make the soles of their shoes, and straps and thongs for various other purposes. The flesh they eat, and the fat is carefully stored, both for kitchen use, and for their lamps. The whiskers are found to be the best materials for sewing together the seams of their

their canoes; they likewise make nets of them for the larger kind of fish; and with the under jaw-bones their sledges are shod. They also work the bones into knives; and formerly the chains with which their dogs are tied, were made of that material, though at present iron ones are generally used.

They have in those Seas abundance of various sorts; fish indeed may here be called the staff of life; it is certainly a much greater object with them than bread.

The lakes that have a communication with the sea, which was the case with all those that were seen, abound with fish that have very much the resemblance of small salmon, and are from four to six pounds weight. They could not understand that the inhabitants thought it worth their while to fish for them:

The furs sell at a high price. The sailors brought a great number with them from the coast of America, and were not less astonished than delighted with the quantity of silver the merchants paid down for them; but on finding neither gin shops to resort to, nor tobacco, or any thing else that they cared for, to be had for money, the roubles * soon became troublesome companions, and were kicked about the deck.

The people of this Country generally enter into the conjugal state at the age of thirteen or fourteen. Their industry is abundantly conspicuous.

Their houses are only to be found in towns, which are called *Ostrogs*. St. Peter and St. Paul consists of about thirty habitations.

The outermost garment of the mens dress is of the shape of a carter's frock. Those worn in summer are of nankeen; in winter they are made of skins, most commonly of the deer or dog, tanned on one side, the hair being left on the other, which is worn innermost. Under this is a close jacket of nankeen, or other cotton stuffs, and beneath that a shirt of thin Persian silk, of a blue, red, or yellow colour. The remaining part of their dress consists of a pair of tight trowsers, or long breeches of leather, reaching down to the calf of the leg; of a pair of dog or deer skin boots, with the hair innermost; and of a fur cap with two flaps, which

* A rouble is worth about 4s.

which are generally tied up close to the head, but in bad weather are let to fall round the shoulders.

The instructions from the Board of Admiralty having left a discretionary power with the commanding Officer of the expedition, in case of failure in the search of a passage from the Pacific into the Atlantic Ocean, to return to England by whatever route he should think best for the farther improvement of geography; Captain Gore demanded of the principal officers their sentiments, in writing, respecting the manner in which these orders might most effectually be obeyed. The result of their opinions was, that the condition of the ships, of the sails and cordage, made it unsafe to attempt, at so advanced a season of the year, to navigate the sea between Japan and Asia, which would otherwise have afforded the largest field for discovery; that it was therefore advisable to keep to the Eastward of that island, and in their way thither to run along the Kuriles, and examine more particularly the islands that lie nearest the Northern coast of Japan, which are represented as of a considerable size; and independent of the Russian and Japanese governments. Should they be so fortunate as to find in these any safe and commodious harbours, they conceived they might be of importance, either as places of shelter for any future navigators, who may be employed in exploring the seas, or as the means of opening a commercial intercourse among the neighbouring dominions of the two empires. Their next object was to survey the coast of the Japanese Islands, and afterward to make the coast of China, as far to the Northward as they were able, and run along it to Macao.

This plan being adopted, at six o'clock in the evening of the 9th of October, having cleared the entrance of Awatska Bay, they steered to the South East, with the wind North West and by West. At midnight they had a dead calm, which continued till noon of the 10th. Being in soundings of sixty and seventy fathoms of water, they employed their time very profitably

stably in catching cod, which were exceedingly fine and plentiful.

After a series of stormy weather which prevented their endeavours to get to the North West, and little likelihood of its becoming more favourable at this time of year, Captain Gore gave up all thoughts of searching for the Islands to the North of Japan.

At day break of the 26th, they had the pleasure of descrying high land to the Westward, which proved to be Japan.

They stood on till nine, when they were within two leagues of the land. The country is of a moderate height, consists of a double range of mountains; it abounds with wood, and has a pleasing variety of hills and dales. They saw the smoke of several towns or villages, and many houses near the shore, in pleasant and cultivated situations.

On the 29th, at nine o'clock, the wind shifting to the Southward, and the sky lowering, they tacked and stood off to the East, and soon after, they saw a vessel, close in with the land, standing along the shore to the Northward, and another in the offing, coming down on them before the wind. Objects of any kind, belonging to a country so famous; and yet so little known, it will be easily conceived, must have excited a general curiosity. As the vessel to windward, approached, she hauled farther off shore; upon which, they brought to, and she passed a-head of them, at the distance of about half a mile. It would have been easy to have spoken with them; but perceiving, by their manœuvres, that they were much frightened, Captain Gore was not willing to augment their terrors; and, thinking that they should have many better opportunities of communication with this people, suffered them to go off without interruption.

From the 29th of October to the 5th of November, they continued their course to the South East, having very unsettled weather, attended with much lightning and rain. On both days they passed great quantities of pumice stone, several pieces of which they took up, and found to weigh from one ounce to three pounds.

They continued their course to the South West, having the winds from the Northward, without any remarkable occurrence, till the 12th, when they had a most violent gale of wind from the same quarter, which reduced them to the fore-sail, and mizen stay-sail.

On the 15th, they saw three islands, and bore away for the South point of the largest, upon which they observed, a high barren hill, flattish at the top, and when seen from the West South West, presents an evident volcanic crater. The earth, rock, or sand, for it was not easy to distinguish of which its surface is composed, exhibited various colours, and a considerable part they conjectured to be sulphur, both from its appearance to the eye, and the strong sulphureous smell. Some of the officers on board the *Resolution*, which passed nearer the land, thought they saw steams rising from the top of the hill. From these circumstances, Captain Gore gave it the name of *Sulphur Island*.

At six in the morning of the 26th, the wind having considerably abated, they bore away West. They saw, this day, a flock of ducks, and many tropic birds, also dolphins and porpusses, and still continued to pass several pumice stones. They spent the night upon their tacks, and, at six in the morning of the 27th, again bore away West in search of the *Bahies*.

In the forenoon of the 29th, they passed several Chinese fishing boats, who eyed them with great indifference.

In the morning of the 30th, they ran along the *Lema Isles*. At nine o'clock, a Chinese boat came alongside, and wanted to put on board them a pilot, which however they declined, as it was their business to follow their consort.

Soon after, however, the *Resolution* made a signal for one; they now saw an excellent race between four Chinese boats, and Captain Gore, engaged with the man who arrived first, to carry the ship to the *Typha*, for thirty dollars. Soon after, a second pilot getting on

on board the Resolution, insisted on conducting the ship, but this was opposed, as one pilot was sufficient for both the ships.

In obedience to the instructions given to Captain Cook by the board of Admiralty, it now became necessary to demand of the officers and men their Journals, and what other papers they might have in their possession, relating to the history of their voyage. Captain Gore says, that it gave him the greatest satisfaction to find that both officers and men cheerfully complied with his request.

They kept working to windward till six in the evening, when both ships came to anchor on the 1st of December.

In the forenoon of the 2d, one of these Chinese contractors, who are called *Compradors*, went on board the Resolution, and sold to Captain Gore 40 hundred pounds weight of beef, together with a considerable quantity of greens, oranges, and eggs.

In the evening Captain Gore sent Mr. King on shore to visit the Portugueze Governor, and to request his assistance in procuring refreshments for the crews, which he thought might be done on more reasonable terms than the *Comprador* would undertake to furnish them. On his arrival at the citadel, the Fort-major informed him, that the Governor was sick, and not able to see company; on acquainting the Major with their desire of proceeding immediately to Canton, he told him that they could not venture to furnish them with a boat, till leave was obtained from the *Hoppo*, or officer of the customs.

As he was returning to the ship, much vexed at the prospect of delay, the Portugueze officer asked him, if they did not mean to visit the English gentlemen at Macao? this question gave Mr. King inexpressible pleasure, indeed transported him with joy; he immediately proceeded to the house of one of his countrymen, where the information he received was in its effects not to be described.

On the 9th, Captain Gore received an answer from the Committee of the English Super cargoes at Canton, to whom he had written, in which they assured him, that their best endeavours should be used to procure the supplies they stood in need of, as expeditiously as possible; and that a passport should be sent for one of his officers.

The following day, an English merchant applied to Captain Gore for the assistance of a few hands to navigate a vessel he had purchased at Macao, up to Canton. Captain Gore judging this a good opportunity to send Captain King to proceed to that place, gave orders that he should take along with him his Second Lieutenant, the Lieutenant of marines, and ten seamen. As they approached the Bocca Tygris, which is fifteen leagues from Macao, the Chinese coast appeared in white cliffs.

They did not arrive at Wampú, which is only nine leagues from the Bocca Tygris, till the 18th. Wampú is a small Chinese town, off which the ships of the different nations, who trade here, lie, in order to take in their lading.

From Wampú he immediately proceeded in a *jam-pane*, or Chinese boat, to Canton, which is about two leagues and a half higher up the river. These boats are neat and very convenient for passengers. They are of various size, almost flat at the bottom, very broad upon the beam, and narrow at the head and stern, which are raised and ornamented; the middle, where they sat, was arched over with a roof of bamboo, which may be raised or lowered at pleasure: in the sides were small windows with shutters, and the apartment was furnished with handsome mats, chairs, and tables.

He reached Canton a little after it was dark, and landed at the English factory, where, though his arrival was very unexpected, he was received with every mark of attention and civility. The Select Committee, at this time, consisted of Mr. Fitzlingh the President, Mr. Bevan and Mr. Rapier. They immediately gave him an account of such stores as the India ships were able to afford. Wishing therefore to
make

make his stay here as short as possible, he requested the gentlemen to procure boats for him the next day to convey the stores; but they were soon informed, that business of that kind was not to be transacted so rapidly in this country; that many forms were to be complied with, and, in short, that patience was an indispensable virtue in China.

As Canton was likely to be the most advantageous market for furs, he was requested by Captain Gore to carry about twenty sea-otters skins, chiefly the property of the deceased Commanders, and to dispose of them at the best price; a commission, which gave him an opportunity of becoming a little acquainted with the genius of the Chinese for trade. He was accordingly directed to a member of the *Hong*, a society of the principal merchants of the place, who assured him they might depend on his integrity, and in a case of this sort, he should consider himself merely as an agent, without looking for any profit to himself. Having laid the goods before him, he examined them with great care, and said, that he could not venture to offer more than three hundred dollars for them. As he knew from the price skins had sold for in Kamtschatka that he had not offered one half their value, he now found it necessary to be cautious, in his turn, and therefore demanded one thousand, and actually received eight hundred.

Canton, including the old and new town, and the suburbs, is about ten miles in circuit. Its inhabitants, as near as can be computed, from 100 to 150,000.

There are beside supposed to be 40,000 who reside constantly in Barges, called *Sampares*, or Floating Houses upon the River. They are moored in rows close to each other, with a narrow passage at intervals for the boats to pass up and down the river. As the Tygris at Canton is somewhat wider than the Thames at London, and the whole river is covered in this manner for the extent of at least a mile, this account of their number does not appear to me in the least exaggerated.

The streets are long, and most of them narrow and irregular, but well paved with large stones, and, for the most part, kept exceedingly clean. The houses are built of brick, one story high, having generally two or three courts backward, in which are the warehouses for merchandize; and in the houses within the city, the apartments for the women. A very few of the meanest sort are built of wood.

The English supercargoes live together at a common table, which is kept by the company. The time of their residence seldom exceeds eight months annually. They very rarely pay any visits within the walls of Canton, except on public occasions.

In the evening of the 26th, he took leave of the supercargoes, having thanked them for their many obliging favours; amongst which, he mentions a handsome present of tea for the use of the ships companies, and a large collection of English periodical publications. The latter was found a valuable acquisition, as they both served to amuse their impatience during a tedious voyage home, and enabled them to return not total strangers to what had been transacting in their native country.

During Captain King's absence a brisk trade had been carrying on with the Chinese for the sea-otter skins, which had every day been rising in their value. One of the seamen sold his stock, alone, for eight hundred dollars; and a few prime skins, which were clean and had been well preserved, were sold for one hundred and twenty each. The whole amount of the value in *specie* and goods that was got for the furs in both ships did not fall short of two thousand pounds sterling; and it was generally supposed, that at least two-thirds of the quantity they had originally got from the Americans were spoiled and worn out, or had been given away, and otherwise disposed of, in Kamtschatka.

The rage with which the seamen were possessed to return to Cook's River, and buy another cargo of furs to make their fortunes at one time, was not far short of insanity.

The

The barter which had been carrying on with the Chinese for the sea-otter skins, had produced a very whimsical change in the dress of all their crew. On their arrival here, nothing could exceed the ragged appearance both of the younger officers and seamen; for as the voyage had already exceeded, by near a twelvemonth, the time it was at first imagined they should remain at sea, almost the whole of their original stock of European clothes had been long worn out, or patched up with skins, and the various manufactures they had met with in the course of their discoveries. These were now again mixed and eked out with the gaudiest silks and cotton of China.

On the 17th of January, two seamen belonging to the Resolution found means to run off with a six-eared cutter, and notwithstanding diligent search was made, both that and the following day, they were never able to learn any tidings of her. It was supposed, that these people had been seduced by the prevailing notion of making a fortune by returning to the fur islands.

PRICES OF LABOUR IN CHINA.

A coolie, or porter	6 0 8	per day.
A taylor	0 0 5	and rice.
A handicraftsman	0 0 8	
A common labourer, from 3d. to 5d.		
A woman's labour considerably cheaper.		

On the 12th of January, 1780, at noon, they anchored.

Captain King was informed at Canton, that the public prints, which had arrived last from England, made mention of instructions having been found on board all the French ships of war, captured in Europe, directing their commanders, in case of falling in with the ships that sailed under the command of Captain Cook, to suffer them to proceed on their voyage without molestation. The same orders were

also said to have been given by the American Congress to the vessels employed in their service. As this intelligence was farther confirmed by the private letters of several of the supercargoes, Captain Gore thought himself bound, in return for the liberal exceptions made in their favour, to refrain from availing himself of any opportunities of capture, which these might afford, and to preserve, throughout his voyage, the strictest neutrality.

In the morning of the 20th, they steered West by South for Pulo Condore; and at half past twelve got sight of the island.

As soon as they were come to anchor, Captain Gore fired a gun, with a view of apprising the natives of their arrival, and drawing them toward the shore, but without effect.

None of the natives having yet made their appearance, notwithstanding a second gun had been fired, Captain Gore thought it advisable to land, and go in search of them. They proceeded through a thick wood, up a steep hill, to the distance of a mile, when after descending, they arrived at some huts; Captain King ordered the party to stay without, lest the sight of so many armed men should terrify the inhabitants, while he entered and reconnoitred alone. He found, in one of the huts an elderly man, who was in a great fright, and preparing to make off with the most valuable effects. However, a few signs, particularly that most significant one of holding out a handful of dollars, and then pointing to a herd of buffaloes, and the fowls that were running about the huts in great numbers, left him without any doubts as to the objects of their visit. He pointed toward a place where the town stood, and made them comprehend, that by going thither, all their wants would be supplied. On their first coming out of the wood, a herd of buffaloes, to the number of twenty at least, came running towards them, tossing up their heads, snuffing the air, and roaring in a hideous manner. They had followed them to the huts, and stood drawn up in a body, at a little distance; and the old man made them understand.

find, that it would be exceedingly dangerous to more,
 till they were driven into the woods; but so enraged
 were the animals grown at the sight of them, that
 this was not effected without a good deal of time and
 difficulty. The men, not being able to accomplish
 it, they called to their assistance a few little boys, who
 soon drove them out of sight. Afterward, they had
 an opportunity of observing, that in driving these
 animals, and securing them, which is done by putting
 a rope through a hole made in their nostrils, little
 boys were always employed, who could stroke and
 handle them with impunity, at times when the men
 durst not approach them. Having got rid of the
 buffaloes they were conducted to the town, which con-
 sists of between twenty and thirty houses built close
 together; besides six or seven others that are scattered
 about the beach. The roof, the two ends, and the
 side fronting the country, are neatly constructed of
 reeds; the opposite side, facing the sea, is intirely
 open; but, by means of a sort of bamboo screens,
 they can exclude or let in as much of the sun and air
 as they please.

They were conducted to the largest house where
 the Chief or Captain, as they called him, resided; but he
 was absent; therefore no purchases could, as they said,
 made.

At two in the afternoon they returned to the ships.

Captain Gore's inquiries were now solely directed to
 find out what supplies could be obtained from the
 island. He was informed that there was plenty of
 buffaloes, which might be purchased for four or five
 dollars a head; but finding that he expressed himself
 much pleased with the moderation of the price, the
 Natives rose in their demands, and made them pay se-
 ven or eight dollars.

Early in the morning of the 23^d, the launches of
 both ships were sent to the town, to fetch the buffaloes
 which were purchased. On their arrival, they found
 the surf breaking on the beach with such force, that
 it was with the utmost difficulty each launch brought
 a buffalo on board in the evening, and the officers,
 employed

employed in this business, gave it as their opinion, that between the violence of the surf, and the fierceness of the buffaloes, it would be extremely imprudent to attempt bringing any more off in this way. They had purchased eight, and were now at a loss in what manner to proceed to get them on board. It was at last concluded that they should be driven through the wood, and over the hill down to the bay, where Captain Gore and Captain King had landed the day before, which being sheltered from the wind, was more free from surf. This plan was accordingly put in execution; but the untractableness and prodigious strength of the buffaloes, rendered it a tedious and difficult operation. The method of conducting them was, by passing ropes through their nostrils, and round their horns; but having been once enraged at the sight of the sailors, they became so furious, that they sometimes broke the trees, to which we were often under the necessity of tying them; sometimes they tore asunder the cartilage of the nostril, through which the ropes ran, and got loose. On these occasions, all exertions to recover them, would have been ineffectual, without the assistance of the young boys, whom as before mentioned these animals would permit to approach them, and by whose little managements their rage is soon appeased. And when, at length, they were got down to the beach, it was by their aid, in twisting ropes round their legs, that they were thrown down and got into the boats. A circumstance, respecting these animals, no less singular than this gentleness toward, and, as it should seem, affection for little children, was, that they had not been twenty-four hours on board, before they became the tamest of all creatures. Captain King kept two of them, a male and female, for a considerable time, and thinking that a breed of animals of such strength and size, weighing, when dressed, seven hundred pounds weight, would be a valuable acquisition, he intended to have brought them to England; but was frustrated by an incurable hurt that one of them received at sea.

Besides

Besides the buffaloes, of which there were several large herds in this island, they purchased from the natives some remarkable fine fat hogs, of the Chinese breed. They brought with them three or four of a wild sort, and several of their tracks were seen in the woods; which also abound with monkies and squirrels; but so shy, that it was difficult to shoot them. The ships were in want of wood, with which this island supplied them.

The inhabitants, who are fugitives from Cambodia and Chochin China, are not numerous. They are of a short stature, and very swarthy, and of a weak and unhealthy aspect; but, as far as they could judge, of a gentle disposition.

On the 28th of January, 1780, they unmoored; and, as soon as they were clear of the harbour, steered South South West.

On the 5th of February, they approached the coast of Sumatra. At the distance of two or three miles from the shore, there are ten, eleven, twelve, or thirteen fathoms, free from rocks or shoals. This island is covered with wood down to the water's edge.

On the 7th, at four in the afternoon, they saw two sail in the straits of Sundz. Not knowing to what nation they might belong, they cleared for action; and at six came to an anchor. The ships now hoisting Dutch colours, Captain Gore sent a boat on board for intelligence.

Early in the afternoon, the boat returned with an account that the large ship was a Dutch East-Indiaman, bound for Europe; and the other a packet from Batavia, with orders for the several ships lying in the Straits. It is the custom for the Dutch ships, as soon as their lading is nearly compleated, to leave Batavia, on account of its extreme unwholesomeness, and proceed to some of the more healthy islands in the Straits, where they wait for the remainder of their cargo, and their dispatches.

Notwithstanding this precaution, the Indiaman had lost, since her departure from Batavia, four men, and had as many more whose recovery was doubtful.

As

At seven in the morning of the 9th, they weighed, and soon after saw another Dutch vessel.

Next morning Mr. Williamson went on board, and learnt, that she had been seven months from Europe, and three from the Cape of Good Hope; that before she sailed, France and Spain had declared war against Great Britain; and that she lost Sir Edward Hughes, with a squadron of men of war, and a fleet of East-India ships at the Cape.

This news was immediately communicated to Captain Gore.

At three o'clock in the morning of the 12th, they stood over for Princes Island, and came to an anchor within half a mile of the shore. Here they began watering early the next morning, and finished the same day.

The natives, who came to them soon after they anchored, brought a plentiful supply of large fowls, and some turtles; but the last, for the most part, were very small.

On the 18th, they weighed and stood out to sea, but variable winds, prevented their getting under way till two in the afternoon, when a light wind sprung up from the Northward; but this soon after leaving them, they were obliged to drop their anchor again, at eight o'clock that night, in fifty fathoms water, and wait till the same hour the next morning.

Captain King says, he was exceedingly struck with the great resemblance of the inhabitants in figure, colour, manners, and even language to those he had been so conversant with in the South Seas.

Here they were well supplied with small turtle, and fowls of a moderate size; the last were sold at the rate of ten for a Spanish dollar. The natives also brought them many hog, deer, and a prodigious number of monkeys, to their great annoyance, as most of the sailors provided themselves with one, if not two of these troublesome animals.

From the time of their entering these Straits, they began to experience the powerful effects of this pestilential

lential climate. Two of the people fell dangerously ill of malignant, putrid fevers; which however they prevented from spreading, by putting the patients apart from the rest in the most airy births; and were had the singular satisfaction of escaping from these fatal seas without the loss of a single life; probably owing to the vigorous health of the crews, and the strict attention, now become habitual in the men, to the salutary regulations introduced amongst them by Captain Cook.

It had hitherto been Captain Gore's intention to proceed directly to St. Helena, without stopping at the Cape; but the rudder of the Resolution having been for some time complaining, and, on being examined, reported to be in a dangerous state, he resolved to steer immediately for the Cape, as the most eligible place, both for the recovery of his sick, and for procuring a new main-piece to the rudder.

In the forenoon of the 10th of April, a snow was seen bearing down to them, which proved to be an English East-India packet that had left Table Bay three days before, and was cruizing with orders for the China fleet, and other India ships. She told them, that about three weeks before, Mons, Trongoller's squadron, consisting of six ships, had sailed from the Cape, and was gone to cruize off St. Helena, for the English East Indiamen.

The next morning they arrived at the Cape, and stood into Simons Bay. They found lying there, the Nassau and Southampton East-Indiamen, waiting for convoy for Europe. The Resolution saluted the fort with eleven guns, and the same number was returned.

Mr. Brandt, the Governor of this place, came to visit them as soon as they had anchored. He appeared much surpris'd to see the crew in so healthy a condition, as the Dutch ship that had left Macao, on their arrival there, and had touch'd at the Cape some time before, reported, that they were in a most wretched state, having only fourteen hands left on board the Resolution, and seven on board the Discovery. It is

not easy to conceive the motive these people could have had for propagating so wanton and malicious a falsehood.

On the 15th, Captain Gore and Captain King went to Cape town, and waited upon the Governor by whom they were received with every possible attention and civility. Both he and Mr. Brandt had conceived a great personal affection for Captain Cook, as well as the highest admiration of his character, and heard the recital of his misfortune, with many expressions of unaffected sorrow.

Having completed their victualling, and furnished themselves with the necessary supply of naval stores, they sailed out of the bay on the 6th of May.

On the 12th of June, they passed the equator for the fourth time during the voyage.

On the 12th of August, they made the western coast of Ireland, and after a fruitless attempt to get into Port Galway, from whence it was Captain Gore's intention to have sent the Journals and maps of their voyage to London, they were obliged, by strong Southerly winds, to steer to the Northward. On the 23d of August, at eleven in the morning, both ships came to an anchor at Stromness; and on the 4th day of October the ships arrived safe at the Nore, after an absence of four years, two months, and twenty-two days.

In the course of the voyage, the Resolution lost but five men by sickness, three of whom were in a precarious state of health at their departure from England; the Discovery did not lose a man. An unremitting attention to the regulations established by Captain Cook, may be justly considered as the principal cause, under the blessing of divine Providence, of this singular success.

The preventives they principally relied on were four kroust and portable soup. As to the antiscorbutic remedies, with which they were amply supplied, they had no opportunity of trying their effects, as there did not appear the slightest symptoms of the scurvy, in either ship, during the whole voyage.

Captain

Captain King strongly recommends the practice of allowing a quantity of Peruvian bark to such of his Majesty's ships as may be exposed to the influence of unwholesome climates. It happened very fortunately in the *Discovery*, that only one of the men that had fevers in the Straits of Sunda, stood in need of this medicine, as he alone consumed the whole quantity usually carried out by the Surgeons, in such vessels as theirs.

It is very extraordinary that in so long and hazardous a voyage, the two ships never lost sight of each other for a day together, except twice; which was owing, the first time, to an accident that happened to the *Discovery* off the coast of Owhyhee; and the second, to the fogs they met with at the entrance of Awatska Bay: a strong proof of the merit of the subaltern officers.

F I N I S.

In the Press, and in a few Days will be published.

A COMPENDIOUS HISTORY
OF
CAPTAIN COOK'S former VOYAGES OF
DISCOVERY;

Printed to correspond with this Volume and the
ABRIDGEMENT OF LORD ANSON'S VOYAGE.

...the practice of
...a quantity of ...
...this ...
...It happened very ...
...in the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...It is very ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...

A COMPENDIOUS HISTORY

OF

CAPTAIN COOK'S FOURTH VOYAGE OF
DISCOVERY;

Printed in conformity with the Orders and the
Resolutions of the Admiralty.

of
follow
M
and
in the
favor
me
m
i
i
doubt
other
over
the U
one
A
in

Printed
M



GENERAL CHART.

and his Two preceding VOYAGES, with the TRACKS of the SHIPS under his Command.
Roberts of His Majesty's Royal Navy.



J. Wandelaar sculp. J. Blagden del.

C. Knorrby in Fleet Street 1784.

